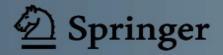


# Concise Guide to Quantum Computing

Algorithms, Exercises, and Implementations



Texts in Computer Science Series Editors David Gries

Department of Computer Science, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY, USA Orit Hazzan

Faculty of Education in Technology and Science, Technion—Israel Institute of Technology, Haifa, Israel

More information about this series at <a href="http://www.springer.com/series/3191">http://www.springer.com/series/3191</a> Titles in this series now included in the Thomson Reuters Book Citation Index!

'Texts in Computer Science' (TCS) delivers high-quality instructional content for undergraduates and graduates in all areas of computing and information science, with a strong emphasis on core foundational and theoretical material but inclusive of some prominent applications-related content. TCS books should be reasonably self-contained and aim to provide students with modern and clear accounts of topics ranging across the computing curriculum. As a result, the books are ideal for semester courses or for individual self-study in cases where people need to expand their knowledge. All texts are authored by established experts in their fields, reviewed internally and by the series editors, and provide numerous examples, problems, and other pedagogical tools; many contain fully worked solutions.

The TCS series is comprised of high-quality, self-contained books that have broad and comprehensive coverage and are generally in hardback format and sometimes contain color. For undergraduate textbooks that are likely to be more brief and modular in their approach, require only black and white, and are under 275 pages, Springer offers the flexibly designed Undergraduate Topics in Computer Science series, to which we refer potential authors.

Sergei Kurgalin and Sergei Borzunov

# Concise Guide to Quantum Computing

# Algorithms, Exercises, and Implementations

1st ed. 2021

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_BookFrontmatter\_Figa\_HTML.png Logo of the publisher

Sergei Kurgalin

Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia Sergei Borzunov

Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia ISSN 1868-0941e-ISSN 1868-095X

Texts in Computer Science

ISBN 978-3-030-65051-3e-ISBN 978-3-030-65052-0

https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2021

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are solely and exclusively licensed by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

The publisher, the authors and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG

The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

### Preface

The role of Computing Science in modern society can hardly be overestimated. The rapid development of physics, chemistry, biology, medicine as well as achievements in economics is based on the developing possibility of solving resource-intensive problems on powerful computing systems. Nevertheless, the exponential complexity of many practically significant problems leads to considerable difficulties even while using a supercomputer.

The approach to computing, fundamentally different from the widely known and available—classical—computing, provides quantum theory. Quantum-mechanical methods of solving problems in some cases provide exponential speedup in comparison with traditional algorithms. The idea of accelerating computational processes by using quantum systems began to develop in many academic and industrial world centers.

Training specialists in the field of computing science, meeting the requirements of time, leads to the need to pay special attention to the basics of quantum computing. In our opinion, there are not enough books describing quantum computing on the methodical level available for future programmers in the educational literature at the present time. The known textbooks on quantum theory in the majority do not contain the data on quantum algorithms and, therefore, are not completely focused on the training of experts in the field of information technology. In this workbook, we made an attempt to fill this gap.

The book was developed over several years using the experience of teaching the quantum theory course at Computer Science Faculty of Voronezh State University. Its content corresponds to Federal State Educational Standards in the areas of Bachelor's Degree "Information Systems and Technologies", "Software Engineering", "Information Security", "Mathematics and Computer Science", Specialist's degree in "Computer Security", and Master's degree in "Information Systems and Technologies".

This workbook is intended for laboratory, practical classes and for independent study. It contains basic theoretical concepts and methods for solving basic types of problems, as well as a large number of explanatory examples. It gives an idea of the quantum computing model, basic operations with qubits and universal elements of quantum schemes, introduces definitions of entangled states, and analyzes the Einstein–Podolsky–Rosen experiment. Much attention is paid to examples of the most important quantum algorithms—the algorithms of phase evaluation and the Fourier quantum transformation.

The workbook offers a large number of problems and exercises of a wide range of complexity for independent solution. All problems, except the simplest ones, are equipped with answers, hints, or solutions. The most difficult problems are highlighted with the character "asterisk" (\*), placed before their number. The end of an example in the text is indicated by the symbol \$\$\square\$\$. The book includes a sufficient number of illustrations and diagrams to help visualize the objects being studied and the connections between them. Review questions on theoretical material are formulated to test knowledge.

There are two appendices to the textbook. In *Appendix A*, the system of postulates of quantum theory is formulated. That will help students to fix and systematize knowledge and skills in solving quantum-mechanical problems. *Appendix B* contains a summary of information on Hermitian and unitary transformations, which are known to play a major role in quantum theory and its applications.

Mastering the material requires knowledge of the basics of linear algebra and elementary probability theory. The knowledge of quantum mechanics basics is not strictly necessary.

The authors sought to make the presentation of the material available without losing the rigor of the wording of the statements. Theorems and properties are accompanied by proofs or references to scientific literature.

A detailed reference and bibliography aids is one of the distinguishing features of this manual. *References* contains links to educational literature, where the issues discussed in the text of this workbook are covered in detail. In addition, the reference list contains references to fundamental original works in the field of quantum computing. It is hoped that the reading of such articles will allow students to get the skill of working with a steadily increasing flow of information about modern researches in this field.

The workbook is provided with *Name* and *Subject Indices*.

Below you can see the scheme of the chapter information dependence in the form of an oriented graph reflecting the preferable order of covering the academic material. For instance, after having studied Chaps. 1–3, you can move to one of the three Chaps. 4, 5 or 6, whose contents are relatively independent. The dashed border marks Chap. 7, which will be suitable for readers who want to reach a high level of the subject knowledge; this section contains more difficult academic material. This way, after studying Chap. 6, you can either come to Chap. 8, or, for better mastery, study the material of Chap. 7 more thoroughly for better digestion, and only then switch to Chap. 8.

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_BookFrontmatter\_Figb\_HTML.png

Sergei Kurgalin Sergei Borzunov Voronezh, Russia July 2020 Acknowledgments

The authors would like to express their grateful acknowledgment to their colleagues Valeria Kaverina, Alexander Klinskikh, Alexey Kornev, Sergei

Kurgansky, Peter Meleshenko, Mikhail Semenov, and Sergei Zapryagaev for useful discussions, advice, and critical comments.

We would like to thank Senior Editor Wayne Wheeler from Springer. Editorial Director Aliaksandr Birukou provided continuous and comprehensive support at all stages.

Probably, there are inevitable errors and inaccuracies in the book, all of which remain on the authors' conscience.

Sergei Kurgalin expresses special gratitude to Olga Kurgalina, Alexander Shirokov, and Veronica Shirokova for their constant support during the work on the book.

July 2020

Sergei Kurgalin Sergei Borzunov Notation

\$\$\vert\psi\rangle \$\$

Quantum state, ket vector

\$\$\langle\psi\vert \$\$

Bra vector

\$\$\vert{0}\rangle\$\$, \$\$\vert{1}\rangle\$\$

Basis quantum states of the qubit

\$\$\\vert\psi\_{1}\rangle }\otimes {\vert\psi\_{2}\rangle }\$\$ or \$\$\$\\vert\psi\_{1}\rangle } {\vert\psi\_{2}\rangle }\$\$

Tensor product

$$$$A=({a}_{ij})$$$$

Matrix, formed by elements ▶\${a}\_{ij}\$\$

**\$\$**\$\${A}^{T}\$\$

Transposed matrix

\$\$\${A}^{\dagger}\$\$

Hermitian conjugate matrix

S\${M}\_{U}\$\$

Matrix of a unitary transformation S\$\$U\$\$

\$\$\${\delta }\_{ij}\$\$

Kronecker delta

\$\$\sigma \\_{1}\$\$, \$\$\$\\sigma \\_{2}\$\$, \$\$\$\\sigma \\_{3}\$\$

Pauli matrices

\$\$\alpha \\_{1}\$\$, \$\$\alpha \\_{2}\$\$, \$\$\alpha \\_{3}\$\$, \$\$\beta \$\$

Dirac matrices

\$\${\lambda }\_{1},{\lambda }\_{2},\dots ,{\lambda }\_{8}\$\$

Gell-Mann matrices

\$\\{\a\\_{1},\{a\\_{2},\\dots,\{a\\_{n}\\}\$\$ The set consisting of the elements \$\\$\{a\\_{1},\{a\\_{2},\\\dots,\{a\\_{n}\\$\$}\$

 $$$\mathrm{N}=\{\mathrm{1,2},3,\cdot}\$ 

The set of natural numbers

```
$$\mathbb{Z}=\{0,\pm 1,\pm 2,\pm 3\}
The set of integers
```

- $$$\mathbb{R}=(-\mathbb{\infty}_{\infty})$ The set of real numbers
- $$$\mathbb{C}=\mathbb{R}\times\mathbb{R}\times\mathbb{R}$ The set of complex numbers
- $$\$\mathbb{B}={\mathrm{0,1}}$ \$
  Two-element set
- \$\$\mathbb{H}\$\$
  Hilbert space
- \$\$A\Rightarrow B\$\$

  The logical implication
- \$\$\$A \Leftrightarrow B\$\$

  The logical equivalence
- \$\forall x(P(x))\$\$

  For all \$\sim\$\$x\$\$, the statement \$\sim\$\$P(x)\$\$ is true
- \$\exists x(P(x))\$\$
  There exists such \$\sim\$\$\$x\$\$, that the statement \$\sim\$\$\$P(x)\$\$ is true
- \$\$[a,b]\$\$

  Closed interval \$\$\{x:a\,\legslant\,x\,\legslant\,b\}\$\$

Open interval \$ \{x:a\,<\,x\,&lt;\,b\}\$\$

 $$$\mathrm{sqrt}_{-1}$$ 

The imaginary unit

 $$$\{z}^{\mathrm}$$ 

Conjugate of a complex number \$\sim\$\$\\$z\$\$\$

Sum 
$$\$$$
 {a}\_{1}+{a}\_{2}+\dots +{a}\_{n}\$\$

Product 
$$\$$$
 {a}\_{1}{a}\_{2}\,\dots\, {a}\_{n}\$\$

**\$\$1\$\$** 

Identity matrix

\$\$O\$\$

Zero matrix

\$\$[A,B]\$\$

Commutator of matrices \$\oint\$\$\$A\$\$ and \$\oint\$\$\$B\$\$\$

\$\$\{A,B\}\$\$

Anticommutator of matrices \$\sim\$\$A\$\$ and \$\sim\$\$B\$\$

$$\$$$
\$({a}\_{1},{a}\_{2},\dots,{a}\_{n})\$\$

Vector, i.e. an element of the set  $\mathbb{Z}$ \${A}^{n}\$\$

```
$$\lfloor x \rfloor$$
     Floor function of $\sim$$x$$, that is the greatest integer less or equal to
     the real 🔍 $$x$$
$$\{x}_{\1}\wedge \{x}_{\2}$$
     The conjunction of Boolean values \$${x} {1}$$ and
     \mathbb{Z}$${x} {2}$$
$$${x}_{1}\vee {x}_{2}$$
     The disjunction of Boolean values \$$\{x\}_{1}$$ and \$$\{x\}_{2}$$
\$${x}_{1}\to {x}_{2}$$
     The implication, \mathbb{Z}$${x} {1}$$ implies \mathbb{Z}$${x} {2}$$
\$$${x}_{1}\leftrightarrow {x}_{2}$$
     The equivalence of \$$\{x\}_{1}$ and \$$\{x\}_{2}$$
$$\{x}_{1}\oplus \{x}_{2}\$$
     Addition modulo 2
$$\{x\}_{1}\setminus \{x\}_{2}$
     Sheffer stroke
\$${x} {1}\downarrow {x} {2}$$
     Peirce's arrow
$$O(g(n))$$
     The class of functions growing not faster than $\omega$$g(n)$$
```

 $$$\mathrm{mathrm}(Omega)(g(n))$$ 

The class of functions growing at least as fast as  $\mathbb{Z}$ \$\$g(n)\$\$

 $$$\mathrm{mathrm}^{\t}(g(n))$$ 

The class of functions growing of the same order as \$\$g(n)\$

Notation of main quantum gates see on pages 13 and 30

### Contents

1 Quantum Computing Model 1

References 6

2 Pauli Matrices and Dirac Matrices 7

References 10

3 Basic Operations with Qubits 11

References 18

4 Entangled States 19

References 23

5 Quantum Teleportation 25

References 26

6 Universal Elements of Quantum Circuits 27

References 36

7 Implementation of Boolean Functions 37

References 43

8 Quantum Fourier Transform 45

References 51

9 Phase Evaluation Algorithm 53

Reference 54

10 Quantum Search 55

References 59

**Review Questions** 61

Exercises 63

Answers, Hints, and Solutions 75

**Appendix A: The Postulates of Quantum Theory 105** 

**Appendix B: Complex Matrices** 109

Name Index 117

<u>Index</u> 119

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2021

S. Kurgalin, S. BorzunovConcise Guide to Quantum ComputingTexts in Computer Science<a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0">https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0</a> 1

# 1. Quantum Computing Model

Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1</sup> - and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1</sup> - (1) Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia

Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)

Email: <a href="mailto:kurgalin@bk.ru">kurgalin@bk.ru</a>

Sergei Borzunov

Email: <a href="mailto:sborzunov@gmail.com">sborzunov@gmail.com</a>

Quantum computers use processes of a quantum nature manifested with atoms, molecules, molecular clusters, etc. The description of such processes is based on the application of complex numbers and complex matrices .

As is well known, the basic notion of classical information theory is a **bit** [1]. A classical bit takes the values 0 or 1 (and no other).

A qubit (quantum bit) is the smallest element that executes the information storage function in a quantum computer [2].

**Qubit** is a quantum system \$\\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\\$ that allows two states: \$\\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\\$ and \$\\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\\$. In accordance with the so-called "bra-ket" Dirac\frac1 notation (from word \bra(c)\ket), the symbols \$\\$\\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\\$ and \$\\$\\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\\$ are read as "Ket 0" and "Ket 1", respectively. The brackets \$\\$\\left| {\}\dots \\right\rangle \$\\$ show that \$\\$\\\psi\\psi \$\\$\ is some state of the quantum system.

The fundamental difference between the classical bit and the qubit consists in that, the qubit can be in a state different from \$\$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$ or \$\$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$. The arbitrary state of the gubit is defined by the linear combination of basis states: \$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = u\left| {0}\right\rangle + v\left| {1}\right\rangle , \end{aligned}\$\$ where the complex coefficients *u* and *v* satisfy the following **normalization** condition:  $$$\$   $|u|^2+|v|^2=1$ . \end{aligned}\$\$ (1.2)The mathematical description of basis states reduces to their representation in matrix form: \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {0}\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0  $\end{bmatrix},\quad \left| \{1\}\right| = \left| begin{bmatrix} 0 \right| 1$ \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}\$\$ (1.3)Based on the presentation (1.3), the arbitrary state of the qubit is written as \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}\$\$ (1.4)A system of two qubits is set by a linear combination of basis states \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| \{00}\right\rangle = \begin\{bmatrix\} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\  $0 \cdot \{bmatrix\}, \quad \{01\} \cdot \{01\} \cdot \{bmatrix\} = \{begin\{bmatrix\} \}$  $1 \lor 0 \cdot \{bmatrix\}, \quad \{11\} \land \{11\} \land \{11\} \land \{bmatrix\} \ 0 \lor 0$ (1.5)Similarly are introduced the states \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {00\dots 00}\right\rangle ,\quad \left| {00\dots 01}\right\rangle,\quad \dots,\quad \left| {11\dots 11}\right\rangle \end{aligned}\$\$ (1.6)

of several interacting qubits. Such quantum states are called **computational basis states** or, for short, **basis states**.

In general, the state of a quantum system is described by a vector  $$\$ \left| {\phi } \right| \leq \$ \right| \$  The Hilbert space is a natural generalization of a concept of finite-dimensional vector space  $\$ \$  mathbb  $\{C\}^n \$  to infinitely large  $n \$ 

### Example 1.1

If two qubits are in the states \$\infty\$\$\left| {\psi 1}\right\rangle \$\$ and

### Solution.

\$\$\left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle \$\$, respectively, the state of this quantum system as a whole is described by the product of vectors, or, in other words, of wave functions:

\$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi \_1}\right\rangle \left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle&{}=(u\_1\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\_1\left| {1}\right\rangle) (u\_2\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\_2\left| {1}\right\rangle) (\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\_1\left| {00}\right\rangle +u\_1v\_2\left| {01}\right\rangle +u\_2v\_1\left| {10}\right\rangle +v\_1v\_2\left| {11}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}\$\$ (1.7)

\$\$\$\square \$\$

*Note.* More strictly, the formula (<u>1.7</u>) refers to the so-called **tensor product** in the Hilbert space. For the tensor product, it is often used as the designation "\$\$\otimes \$\$":

\$\$\left| {\psi \_1}\right\rangle \otimes \left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle \$\$. The state of the composite system is given by the tensor product of its components. For instance, if a system is formed by three isolated subsystems in states \$\$\psi \_1\$\$, \$\sim\$\$\psi \_2\$\$, and \$\sim\$\$\psi \_3\$\$, then

```
the composite system according to quantum mechanics principles is
described by the vector
$$\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle \otimes \left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle \otimes
\left| {\psi 3}\right\rangle $$
, or, for short,
$\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle \left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle \left| {\psi
_3}\right\rangle $$
The designation $\$\left\langle {\psi }\right| $$\_"bra" vector \(\text{\text{applies to}}\)
the Hermitian conjugate of the vector $\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle $\$ [6,
$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {\psi }\right| = (\left| {\psi }\right\rangle
^{\d}_{\d}, \end{aligned}$$
(1.8)
and vice versa:
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = (\left\langle {\psi }\right|
^{\d} )^{\dag }. \end{aligned}$$
(1.9)
Let us remember that for an arbitrary complex matrix Z of size
$$m\times n$$, containing elements $$$Z=(z {ij})$$, where
\$$i=1,2,\dots,m$$, \$$$i=1,2,\dots,n$$, the elements of the Hermitian
conjugate matrix are equal to
$$\ {\dag } = z_{ji}^*, \end{aligned}$$
(1.10)
where \$$z^*$ is a complex conjugate of z (see Appendix B on
page 103).
The vector, dual to $\sim$$c\left| {\psi }\right\rangle $$, is
$$c^*\!\left\langle {\psi }\right| $$.
For computational basis vectors, we have the following representations in
the matrix form : \mathbb{S} \left\\langle \{0\}\\right| = [1\; 0]$$,
$$\left| \frac{1}{r} \right| = [0\; 1]
```

It is also easy to write down an arbitrary qubit

{1}\right\rangle \$\$

\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left|

```
$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {\psi }\right| = \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v
\end{bmatrix}^{\dag} = [u^*\; v^*] = u^*\end{bmatrix}^{\dag} = [u^*\; v^*] = u^*\end{bmatrix}
+v^*\left(1\right). \
(1.11)
The operation of the scalar product of complex vectors
$$\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle =u_1\left| {0}\right\rangle +v_1\left|
{1}\right\rangle $$
and
$\left| {\psi 2}\right\rangle =u 2\left| {0}\right\rangle +v 2\left|
{1}\right\rangle $$
is introduced according to the formula
$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle { \psi _1 | \psi _2 }\right\rangle = [u_1^*\;
v_1^*\times \begin{bmatrix} u_2 \\ v_2 \end{bmatrix} =
u_1^*u_2+v_1^*v_2. \end{aligned}$$
(1.12)
Note that the formula (1.12) is a product of a row and a column well known
from linear algebra. The scalar product is also known as the dot product.
Let us list the main properties of the scalar product . For arbitrary vectors
$$\left| {a}\right\rangle $$, $$$\left| {a 1}\right\rangle $$,
$$\left| {a 2}\right\rangle $$, $$$\left| {b}\right\rangle $$ and an
arbitrary complex constant $\in \mathbb \{C\}\$, the following
relations are valid:
```

\$\$\left\langle {a|a}\right\rangle = 0\Leftrightarrow \left| {a}\right\rangle = 0\$\$ (non-negativity);

(1) \$\left\langle \{a\a\\right\rangle \gegslant 0\\$\\$, where

- (2) \$\left\langle \{a|b\\right\rangle = \left\langle \{b|a\\right\rangle \^\*\$\$ (conjugate symmetry);

```
(4)
$\left\langle {\alpha a|b}\right\rangle = \alpha ^*\!\left\langle
{a|b}\right\rangle $$
(anti-linearity with respect to the first argument).
The system of vectors
||$$\{\left| {e 1}\right\rangle ,\left| {e 2}\right\rangle ,\dots ,\left
{e n}\right\rangle \}$$
is called orthonormal, if the condition
$$\begin{aligned} \forall i,j=1,2,\dots ,n:\quad \left\langle { e_i | e_j
}\right\rangle = \delta _{ij} \end{aligned}$$
(1.13)
is met. Here, the designation \( \subseteq \$ \\ \delta \) {ij}$$ is entered for the
Kronecker<sup>3</sup> symbol, defined as follows:
$\begin{aligned} \delta _{ij}= {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 1,\;\text { if
i=j,\ 0,\ \ i=j,\ \ 
(1.14)
In other words, the Kronecker symbol is equal to one in case of matching
indexes, and zero if the indexes are different.
For two arbitrary states of n-qubit systems
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi '}\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2
= \left\{ begin\left\{ bmatrix \right\} \right. \ v_2 \ \ v_{2^n} \ \ \left\{ bmatrix \right\},
\end{aligned}$$
(1.15)
the normalization condition is as follows:
$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {\psi '|\psi '}\right\rangle =\sum
_{i=1}^{2^n} |u_i|^2 = 1, \quad \left\langle {\psi "\\psi "}\right\rangle
=\sum_{i=1}^{2^n} |v_i|^2 = 1. \end{aligned}
(1.16)
The orthogonality condition of two states $\infty$$\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle $$
and $\$\left| {\psi "}\right\rangle $$ is written as follows:
$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {\psi '|\psi ''}\right\rangle = \sum
\{i=1\} \land \{2 \land n\} \ u \ i \land v \ i = 0. \land \{aligned\} 
(1.17)
Note that the states of the computational base (1.6) are orthonormalized.
```

To change the state of a quantum system, quantum operations are used, which are called **quantum logic gates**, or, for short, simply **gates**. Thus, gates perform logical operations on qubits. Note that the change of state \$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ in time is also referred to as the **evolution** of the quantum system.

An important step of quantum algorithms is the procedure of **measurement** of a state. When the qubit state is measured, it randomly passes to one of its states: \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$ or \$\$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$. Therefore, the complex coefficients *u* and *v* from the qubit definition (1.1) are associated with the probability to get the value 0 or 1 when its state is measured. According to the postulates of quantum theory, the probabilities of passing to the states \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$ and \$\$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$ are equal to \$\$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$, respectively. In this connection, the equality (1.2) reflects the probability conservation law. After the measurement, the qubit passes to the basis state, complying with the classical result of the measurement. Generally speaking, the probabilities of getting the result 0 and 1 are different for different states of the quantum system.

In other words, quantum computing is a sequence of simple form operations with the collection of the interacting qubits. In the final step of the quantum computing procedure, the state of the quantum system is measured and a conclusion about the computing result is made. The measurement makes it possible to obtain, at a macroscopic level, the information about the quantum state. The peculiarity of the quantum measurements is their irreversibility, which radically differentiates quantum computing from the classical one.

Despite the fact that the number of qubit states is infinite, with the help of measurement it is possible to obtain only one bit of classical information. The measurement procedure transfers the qubit state to one of the basis states, so a second measurement will produce the same result.

Quantum computer is a set of n qubits controlled by external (classic) signals [8–12]. Often, an ordered set of some qubits is called a **register**. The main elements of a quantum computer are shown in Fig. 1.1.

```
.../images/505754_1_En_1_Chapter/505754_1_En_1_Fig1_HTML.p ng Fig. 1.1
```

Main elements of a quantum computer

The classical quantum computer setting consists of the controlling classical computer and impulse generators controlling the qubit evolution, as well as measurement instruments of the qubit state. The system from n qubits in the initial state, e.g.

```
$$\left| {\psi _{\text {in}}}\right\rangle =\left| {00\dots 0}\right\rangle $$
```

, forms a memory register prepared to record input data and perform computations. The data are recorded by an external action on each of the system's qubits. The solution of the problem is determined by a measurement of the final state qubits

```
$\left| {\psi _{\text {out}}}\right\rangle $$ [<u>2</u>, <u>12</u>].
```

The state of the form \$ \left| {b\_{n-1}\\dots b\_1b\_0}\\right\\rangle \$\$ is usually written in decimal notation as \$ \left| {a}\\\right\\\rangle \$\$, where the number

```
$$\begin{aligned} a = 2^0b_0+2^1b_1+\dots +2^{n-1}b_{n-1}. \end{aligned}$$ (1.18)
```

In this record, the state \$\\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ of the *n*-qubit register of a quantum computer is expressed through the superposition of vectors of computational basis

```
$$$B=\big \{\left| {0}\right\rangle ,\left| {1}\right\rangle ,\dots ,$$
```

\$\$\left| {2^n-1}\right\rangle \big \}\$\$ by the formula

where the normalization condition

 $$$\left(1.20\right) \simeq {k=0}^{2^k-1} |c_k|^2=1 \end{cases} \ (1.20)$ 

is met.

A quantum system, formed by N two-level elements, has  $\$\S\S$  independent states. The key point of the functioning of such a system is the interaction of separate qubits with each other. The number of states  $\$\S\S$  grows exponentially with the growth of the quantum system, which allows solving practical problems of a very high asymptotic complexity. For example, an efficient quantum algorithm of prime factorization is known, which is very important for cryptography [13]. As a result, the quantum algorithms provide exponential or polynomial speedup in comparison with the classical solution methods for many problems.

Unfortunately, no full-function quantum computer has been created yet, although many of its elements have already been built and studied at the world's leading laboratories [11, 14, 15]. The main obstacle to the development of quantum computing is the instability of a system of many qubits. The more the qubits are united into an entangled system, the more the effort is required to ensure the smallness of the number of measurement errors. Nevertheless, the history of quantum computer development demonstrates an enormous potential laid in the uniting of quantum theory and algorithm theory.

Prior to proceeding to describing the basic quantum operations with qubits, let us introduce the notations of the Pauli<sup>4</sup> matrices and the Dirac matrices.

### References

- 1. 1. Cover TM, Thomas JA (2006) Elements of information theory, 2nd edn. Wiley-Interscience, xxiii, 748 p
- 2. 2. Nielsen MA, Chuang IL (2010) Quantum computation and quantum information. 10th anniversary edition. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, xxxi, 676 p
- 3. 3. Day MM (1973) Normed linear spaces, 3rd edn. Springer, viii, 211 p 4. 4.

Kolmogorov AN, Fomin SV (1975) Introductory real analysis. Dover Publications, New York, xii, 402 p

5. 5.

von Neumann J (2018) Mathematical foundations of quantum mechanics. Princeton University Press, 304 p

6. 6.

Dirac PAM (1939) A new notation for quantum mechanics. Math Proc Camb Philos Soc 35(3):416–418

7. 7.

Dirac PAM (1967) The principles of quantum mechanics, 4th edn. (Series: The international series of monographs on physics, 27). Oxford University Press, 314 p

8.8.

Bennett CH, DiVincenzo DP (2000) Quantum information and computation. Nature 404:247–255

9.9.

Galindo A, Martín-Delgado MA (2002) Information and computation: classical and quantum aspects. Rev Modern Phys 74(2):347–423

10. 10.

Harrow AW, Montanaro A (2017) Quantum computational supremacy. Nature 549:203–209

11. 11.

Ladd TD, Jelezko F, Laflamme R, Nakamura Y, Monroe C, O'Brien J (2010) Quantum computers. Nature 464:45–53

12. 12.

Valiev KA (2005) Quantum computers and quantum computations. Physics - Uspekhi 48(1):1–36

13. 13.

Shor PW (1997) Polynomial-time algorithms for prime factorization and discrete logarithms on a quantum computer. SIAM J Comput 26(5):1484–1509

14. 14.

DiVincenzo DP (2000) The physical implementation of quantum computation. Fortschritte der Physik 48:771–783

15. 15.

Williams CP (2011) Explorations in quantum computing, 2nd edn. (Series: Texts in computer science). Springer, xxii, 717 p

```
Footnotes
1
Paul Adrien Maurice Dirac (1902–1984).

2
David Hilbert (1862–1943).

3
Leopold Kronecker (1823–1891).

4
Wolfgang Ernst Pauli (1900–1958).
```

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2021

S. Kurgalin, S. BorzunovConcise Guide to Quantum ComputingTexts in Computer Science<a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0">https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0</a> 2

# 2. Pauli Matrices and Dirac Matrices

```
Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1</sup> - and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1</sup> - (1)
Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia
```

Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)

Email: <a href="mailto:kurgalin@bk.ru">kurgalin@bk.ru</a>

Sergei Borzunov

Email: <u>sborzunov@gmail.com</u>

For the imaginary unit \$\\$\sqrt\{-1\}\\$\\$, we will use the designation \$\\$\mathrm \{i\\equiv \sqrt\{-1\}\\$\\$. The matrices \$\\$\sigma \_1\\$\\$,

\$\$\sigma \_2\$\$, and \$\$\sigma \_3\$\$:

\$\$\begin{aligned} \sigma \_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 &{} 1\\ 1 &{} 0 \end{bmatrix},\quad \sigma \_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 &{} - \mathrm {i}\\ \mathrm {i}&{} 0 \end{bmatrix},\quad \sigma \_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 &{} 0 \\ 0 &{} -1 \end{bmatrix},\end{aligned}\$\$

(2.1)

are called the **Pauli matrices**. They are widely used in quantum theory for describing half-integer spin particles, for example, an electron. (*Spin* is a quantum property of an elementary particle, its intrinsic angular momentum [1]. So, electrons, protons, and neutrinos have half-integer spin; the spin of photons and gravitons is an integer.).

The following properties are valid for the Pauli matrices.

- (1) The Pauli matrices are Hermitian  $\frac{1}{2}$  and unitary (see Appendix B on page 103):
- $$$ \left( \frac{1,2,3} \right) = \sum_{k^{-1}. \in \mathbb{S}}$
- (2) \$ forall k\in \{1,2,3\}\$\$, the square of the Pauli matrix is equal to the identity matrix:
- \$\$\begin{aligned} \sigma \_i^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}\$\$ (2.3)
- (3) \$ forall i,j\in \{1,2,3\}\$\$, the equalities
- \$\$\begin{aligned} \sigma \_i\sigma \_j+\sigma \_j\sigma \_i = 2\delta \_{ij}\! \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}\$\$

(2.4)

are valid. Here, is used a notation for the Kronecker symbol (see definition on page 3).

Note that the value \$\$\{A,B\}=AB+BA\$\$ is usually called **anticommutator** of matrices *A* and *B*, and the value \$\$[A,B]=AB-BA\$\$ is called **commutator**. Next, for the identity matrix, we will apply the notation *I*, and for the zero one *O*. In particular, the formula (2.4) can be written as follows:

\$\$\begin{aligned} \{\sigma \_i,\sigma \_j\} = 2\delta \_{ij}I. \end{aligned}\$\$
(2.5)

The matrices *A* and *B* are called **commutative**, if \$\overline\$\$AB=BA\$\$. Commutative matrices are always square and have the same order.

By definition, the condition \$\$[A,B]=O\$ is met for the commutative matrices [2].

It is clear that the Pauli matrices do not commutate with each other (see Exercise 1).

### Example 2.1

Let us prove the **Jacobi<sup>2</sup> identity** 

```
$$\begin{aligned}{}[[P,Q],R] + [[Q,R],P] + [[R,P],Q] \equiv O \end{aligned}$$ (2.6) that is valid for commutators of any matrices of size $$$n\times n$$.
```

Proof.

Next, let us present in a similar manner the remaining summands in the sum:

```
$$\begin{aligned}{}[[Q,R],P]&= QRP - RQP - PQR + PRQ,\end{aligned}$$
(2.8)
```

\$\$\begin{aligned}{}[[R,P],Q]&= RPQ - PRQ - QRP + QPR. \end{aligned}\$\$
(2.9)

The sum of right-hand values (2.7), (2.8), and (2.9), as can be easily seen after the conversion of such summands, is zero. In this way, the Jacobi identity is proved. \$\$square \$\$

Sometimes, in linear algebra and its applications, one has to use matrices split into rectangular parts or blocks [3, 4]. Consider the rectangular matrix \$\$\$A=(a\_{ij})\$\$, where \$\$\$1\leq 1+m\_2\$\$ and \$\$\$n=n\_1+n\_2\$\$.

Let us draw horizontal and vertical lines and split the matrix *A* into four rectangular blocks:

```
.../images/505754_1_En_2_Chapter/505754_1_En_2_Equ10_HTML.png (2.10)
```

Thus, the matrix A is presented in the form of a **block matrix**, consisting of the blocks  $$\$B_{11}$$ ,  $$\$B_{12}$$ , and  $$\$B_{22}$$  of size  $$\$m_1\times n_1$$ , and  $$\$m_2\times n_2$$ , respectively.

```
As an example of a block matrix setting, we provide the definition of the
Dirac matrices. Four Dirac matrices $\$\alpha \_1\$\$, $\$\alpha \_2\$\$,
$$\alpha 3$$, and $$$\beta $$ are part of the equation named after him
for a half-integer spin relativistic particle, and are expressed in terms of the
Pauli matrices $\sigma \_k$$, $\sigma \_k$$, $\sigma \_k$$, as follows [5]:
$$\begin{aligned} \alpha _k = \begin{bmatrix} O & amp;{} \sigma _k \\
\sigma_k \approx h \ C \ \
\alpha;{} O \setminus O \amp;{} -I \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$
(2.11)
(Relativistic particles are the particles whose velocity is close to the
velocity of light.)
Each of the Dirac matrices has a Hermitian property and a property of
being unitary. Moreover, for all \$$1,m\in \{1,2,3\} the equalities
$$\begin{aligned} \alpha _l \alpha _m + \alpha _m \alpha _l&=
2\delta _{lm}I,\end{aligned}$$
(2.12)
$$\begin{aligned} \alpha _l \beta + \beta \alpha _l&= O
\end{aligned}$$
(2.13)
are valid. Note that the size of matrices I and O in formulas (2.12)
and (2.13) is equal to \$$4\times 4$$.
Using the concept of a block matrix, it is easy to write down the definition
of the tensor product of square matrices $\sime$$A\otimes B$$, defined as
\$$A=(a_{ij})$$, \$$$i,j = 1, 2, \dots, n_A$$, and \$$$B = (b_{ij})$$,
\$$i,j = 1, 2, \dots, n_B$$:
$$\begin{aligned} A\otimes B = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}B & amp;{}
a_{12}B \approx mp; {} \dots \approx mp; {} a_{1n_A}B \ a_{21}B \approx mp; {}
a_{22}B \approx p;{} \dots \approx p;{} a_{2n_A}B \ \\dots \approx p;{} \vdots
\alpha;{} \cdot ddots &{} \cdot ddots &{} \cdot a_{n_A1}B &{} a_{n_A2}B
&{} \dots &{} a_{n_An_A}B \end{bmatrix}, \end{aligned}$$
(2.14)
where \$$a {11}B$$ is a block with size \$$n B\times n B$$,
consisting of elements of the form $\sim$$ a \{11\b\ \{ij\}$$, block
$$$a {12}B$$ consists of elements of the form $$$a {12}b {ij}$$, etc.
```

Note that for the tensor product operation, the sizes of matrices A and B do not have to be the same, i.e. \$\$n Ane n B\$.

### Example 2.2

Let us calculate tensor products \$\infty\$\$\sigma \_1\otimes \sigma \_2\$\$ and \$\$\sigma \_2\otimes \sigma \_1\$\$.

Solution.

We use the definition of the tensor product:

```
$$\begin{aligned} \sigma _1\otimes \sigma _2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0
&{} 1 \setminus 1 \otimes amp;{} 0 \cdot begin{bmatrix} 0
&{} -\mathrm \{i\}\\\\\mathrm \{i\}&{} 0 \end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix} 0\times \sigma _2 & amp;{} 1\times \sigma _2 \\ 1\times
\sigma 2 & amp; {} 0\times \sigma 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0
\alpha;{} 0 \approx mp;{} 0 \approx mp;{} - mathrm {i} \ 0 \approx mp;{} 0 \approx mp;{}
\mathbf{i}&{} 0 \\ 0 &{} -\mathrm {i}&{} 0 &{} 0 \\
\mathrm {i}&{} 0 &{} 0 &{} 0 \end{bmatrix}.
\end{aligned}$$
(2.15)
```

In the same way, we obtain

\$\begin{aligned} \sigma 2\otimes \sigma 1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0  $\alpha;{} 0 \mbox{ amp;{} 0 \mbox{ amp;{} -\mbox{mathrm {i}} 0 \mbox{ amp;{} 0 \mbox{ amp;{} \mathbf{i}$ &{}  $0 \setminus 0$  &{} \mathrm  $\mathbf{i}$ &{} 0 &{} 0 \ \mathrm {i}&{} 0 &{} 0 &{} 0 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}\$\$ (2.16)

From the obtained results, it is easy to see the commutativity of the tensor product operation:

- \$\$\sigma 1\otimes \sigma 2\ne \sigma 2\otimes \sigma 1\$\$.
- \$\$\square \$\$

References

- 1. 1.
  - Landau LD, Lifshitz EM (1989) Quantum mechanics: non-relativistic theory. Course of theoretical physics, vol 3, 3rd edn. Pergamon Press, Oxford
- 2. 2. Kurgalin S, Borzunov S (2020) Algebra and geometry with Python. Springer, Cham. xvi, 425 p

- 3. 3. Gantmacher FR (2000) The theory of matrices, vol 1. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, x, 374 p
- 4. 4. Magnus JR, Neudecker H (2019) Matrix differential calculus with applications in statistics and econometrics, 3rd edn. Wiley Series in Probability and Statistics. Wiley
- 5. 5.
  Berestetskii VB, Lifshitz EM, Pitaevskii LP (1982) Quantum electrodynamics. Course of theoretical physics, vol 4, 2nd edn. Pergamon Press, Oxford

### Footnotes

1

Charles Hermite (1822–1901).

2

Carl Gustav Jacob Jacobi (1804–1851).

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2021 S. Kurgalin, S. BorzunovConcise Guide to Quantum ComputingTexts in Computer Science<a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0">https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0</a> 3

## 3. Basic Operations with Qubits

Let us define the action of \$\\$\sigma \_3\$\$ on this quantum state:

```
Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1</sup> - and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1</sup> -
Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia
Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)
Email: kurgalin@bk.ru
Sergei Borzunov
Email: <a href="mailto:sborzunov@gmail.com">sborzunov@gmail.com</a>
Consider basic operations with qubits.
A quantum gate effect on qubit $\$\left| \\right\rangle $\$ occurs by applying the quantum-mechanical
operator, e.g. ▶$$U\left| {\psi }\right\rangle $$ [1–3]. Operators can be represented as unitary matrices. In
particular, the evolution of a single qubit is described by a unitary matrix of size $\sim$$$\$\sim$$s$\times 2$$.
The consistent application of a number of operators $\$$U 1$$, $\$$U 2$$, ..., $\$$U n$$ to one qubit is
equivalent to the effect of some operator W in the form
$$\begin{aligned} W\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = U_n(U_{n-1}(\dots
(U_2(U_1)\left( \frac{y_1}{y_2}\right)) = (U_1U_2\left( \frac{y_1}{y_2}\right)
{\psi }\right\rangle . \end{aligned}$$
Its matrix $\infty$$M W$$ is a product of matrices of $\infty$$U i$$, $\infty$$is=1,2,\dots,n$$, in the reverse order [4]:
$$\$\begin{aligned} M W = M {U n}M {U {n-1}}\dots M {U 1}.
\end{aligned}$$
(3.2)
Such an operator W is called a product of operators $\sim$$$U 1$$, $\sim$$$U 2$$, ..., $\sim$$$U n$$. Due to the
noncommutativity of the matrix multiplication operation, the order in which quantum gates are applied is
generally important.
Example 3.1
Let us show that the application of the operator $\$\sigma _3\$\ (see definition (2.1)) to a qubit in the state
$$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle =u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left| {1}\right\rangle
                                                                                  brings it to the state
$$\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle =u\left| {0}\right\rangle -v\left| {1}\right\rangle
Proof.
Write a qubit $\infty$$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle $$ in matrix notation:
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v
\end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$
(3.3)
```

The graphic representation of quantum operations in the form of circuits or diagrams (quantum circuits) is widely used.

A **quantum circuit**, or **network**, is an ordered sequence of elements and communication lines connecting them, i.e. wires. Usually, only **acyclic circuits** are considered in which data flow in one direction—from left to right, and the wires do not return bits to the previous position in the circuit. Input states are attributed to the wires coming from the left. In one time step, each wire may enter data in no more than one gate. The output states are read from the communication lines coming out of the circuit on the right.

As you can see, the circuit solves a problem of a fixed size. Unlike the quantum circuit, quantum algorithms are defined for input data of any size [5].

A quantum-mechanical operator *U*, which converts a one-qubit gate, is presented as follows:

The sequence of the quantum algorithm steps corresponds to the direction on the circuit from left to right.

Table 3.1 lists the frequently used gates that convert one qubit and the matrix notations of these gates.

Let us show the computation method of the quantum operation matrix based on its effect on basis vectors. Table 3.1

One qubit operations

Name	Notation	Matrix
Identity transformation	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figb_HTML.p	\$\$ I= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix} \$\$
Pauli Element X	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figc_HTML.p	\$\$ \sigma _1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} 0 \end{bmatrix}

Name	Notation	Matrix
Pauli Element Y	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figd_HTML.p ng	\$\$\sigma _2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & amp;{} - \mathrm {i}\\ \mathrm {i}& amp;{} 0 \end{bmatrix} \$\$
Pauli Element Z	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Fige_HTML.p ng	\$\$ \sigma _3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} -1 \end{bmatrix} \$\$
Hadamard Element	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figf_HTML.p ng	\$\$ \dfrac{1} {\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} -1 \end{bmatrix} \$\$
Phase Element	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figg_HTML.p ng	<pre>\begin{bmatrix} 1 &amp; amp;{} 0 \\ 0 &amp; amp;{} \mathrm {i}\end{bmatrix} \$\$</pre>
Element \$\$\pi /8\$\$	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figh_HTML.p ng	\$\$ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} e^{\mathrm {i}\pi /4} \end{bmatrix} \$\$
Measurement Table 3.2	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figi_HTML.p ng	Projection on the state of computational basis

Table 3.2

Two qubits operations

Name	Notation	Matrix
Exchange	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figj_HTML.p	\begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp; \{ \} 0 \\ 8 & amp; \{ \} 1 \\ 8 & amp; \{ \} 0 \\ 8 & amp; \{ \} 1 \\ 9 & amp; \
Controlled NOT	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figk_HTML.p	\begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp; \{ \} 0 & amp; \{ \} 0 \\ 0 & amp; \{ \} 0 \\ 0 & amp; \{ \} 1 & amp; \{ \} 0 & amp; \{ \} 1 & amp; \
Controlled Phase Element	/images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figl_HTML.p ng	begin{bmatrix} 1 & partition{

```
The Hadamard<sup>1</sup> gate converts the system state in accordance with the rule:
$$\begin{aligned}&\left| {0}\right\rangle \rightarrow \dfrac{1}
{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {0}\right\rangle +\left| {1}\right\rangle ),\end{aligned}$$
(3.5)
$$\begin{aligned}&\left| {1}\right\rangle \rightarrow \dfrac{1}
{\left(\frac{2}{\left(\frac{0}\right)}\right) - \left(\frac{1}\right). \end{aligned}}
Consequently, the arbitrary state $\$\left{\psi}\right\rangle $$ will change in this case as follows:
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle&= \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v
\end{bmatrix}= u \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}+ v \begin{bmatrix} 0
\\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\nonumber \\{}&amp:\rightarrow u\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}
\left(\left(\frac{1}{0}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{1}\right) + v\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \right)
\{0\} \cdot | \{1\} 
\begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$
Thus, the Hadamard gate, or the Hadamard element, corresponds to the matrix
$$ \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} -1
\end{bmatrix} $$
```

Of course, to execute complex algorithms, the qubits must interact with each other and exchange information. In this regard, logical operations involving two or more qubits are of special importance. In Table 3.2 are listed the most important gates that transform the state of two qubits.

### Example 3.2

Let us define how the qubit \$\\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\\$ is converted under double application of the Hadamard gate:

```
.../images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figm_HTML.png
```

Solution.

```
As shown above, in the matrix representation, the Hadamard element is described by the matrix $$\begin{aligned} M_H = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 
\ 1 \ 1 & amp;{} -1 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$ 
(3.8)

Let us compute a matrix corresponding to the double application of the Hadamard element as a matrix product 
(see formula (3.1)):

$$\begin{aligned} M_H M_H = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 
& amp;{} 1 \ 1 & amp;{} -1 \end{bmatrix} \times \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} 
\begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 \ 1 & amp;{} -1 \end{bmatrix} = \dfrac{1}{2} 
\begin{bmatrix} 2 & amp;{} 0 \ 0 & amp;{} 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & amp;{} 0 \ 0 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix}.
\end{aligned}$$
(3.9)

The identity matrix is obtained, therefore a double application of the Hadamard gate returns the qubit to its initial state. $$\square $$
```

As already noted on page 4, the qubit **measurement** operation is fundamental. This operation is performed with a

```
classic (not a quantum) instrument, and it converts the state of one qubit $$$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left| {1}\right\rangle $$$ According to quantum theory principles, M equals zero with a probability of $$|u|^2$$ and one with a probability of $$$|v|^2$$. Specifically, the results of qubit measurements allow the use of quantum-mechanical circuits to obtain information in the macro world.
```

Symbolically, the measurement result is represented in the circuit by a double line:

```
.../images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Fign_HTML.png
Example 3.3
The following quantum state is set:
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left|
{0}\right\rangle +\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{\mathrm {i}\varphi }\left|
{1}\right\rangle, \end{aligned}$$
(3.10)
where $\$\varphi $\$ is a real number. Let us define the result of measuring this state in bases
$$B_1=\{\left| {0}\right\rangle ,\left| {1}\right\rangle \}$$ and
$$\text{\left| \{+}\right\rangle,\left| \{-}\right\rangle \}\$$, where
$\left| \{+}\right\rangle =\dfrac\{1}\{2}\(\left| \{0}\right\rangle +\left|
{1}\right\rangle )$$
                                                                                                                                                              and
$$\left| {-}\right\rangle =\dfrac{1}{2}(\left| {0}\right\rangle -\left|
{1}\right\simeq {1}\right\simeq {}
Solution.
First of all, we consider the basis $\ \$\$B_1\$\$. According to the measurement postulate (see Appendix A on
page 99), the probabilities of getting 0 or 1 as a result of the measurement of the state
$$\u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left| {1}\right\rangle $$ is equal to $$\u|^2$$ and $$\v|^2$$, respectively. In
our example, \$\$u=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} and \$\$v=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} therefore
the result of the measurement of M is
$$\left( M = \left( \left( \operatorname{array}{ll} \right), \right) = \left( \operatorname{array}{ll} \right), \ 0 \right) 
p_1=\frac{1}{2}. \left( \frac{1}{2}. \right) \
(3.11)
Note that information about the value of $\$\varphi$$ using a measurement in the basis $\$$ 1$$ cannot be
obtained.
We express the vectors of the computational basis through $\$\left| \{+}\right\rangle $$ and
$$\left| {-}\right\rangle \}$$:
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {0}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left|
{+}\right\rangle +\left| {-}\right\rangle ),\nonumber \\ \left| {1}\right\rangle =
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {+}\right| {+}\right).
\end{aligned}$$
(3.12)
In this regard, we obtain
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle ={}&\dfrac{1}
{\left| {0}\right| {0}\right| {0}\left| {0}\right| {0}\right| {0}\left| {1}\left| {2}\right| {e^{(mathrm {i}\setminus mathrm 
\left| {1}\right\rangle {}\nonumber \\{}={}&\dfrac{1}{2}(\left|
{+}\right\rangle +\left| {-}\right\rangle )+\dfrac{1}{2}e^{\mathrm {i}\varphi
}(\left| {+}\right\rangle +\left| {-}\right\rangle ) {}\nonumber \\{}=
+\dfrac{1}{2}(1-e^{\mathrm {i}\over i})\left| {-}\right| {-}\right|
\end{aligned}$$
(3.13)
The probability of finding the system in the state $\$\left| \{+}\right\rangle $\$ is
$$\left(1}{2}\right) + ={}\&{}\dfrac{1}{2}\left(1+e^{\mathbb{Z}}\right)
\{i\}\varphi \}\right) \times \left( \dfrac\{1\}{2}\(1+e^{\mathrm }i\}\varphi
\ \nonumber {}\\{} ={}&\dfrac{1}{4}\\left( 1+e^{\mathbb{L}})\
\{i\}\varphi \}\right) \left( 1+e^{-\mathrm \{i\}\varphi \}\right) = \dfrac\{1\}
{4}\left(2+e^{\mathbf{t}}\right) + e^{-\mathbf{t}}\right).
\end{aligned}$$
```

```
(3.14)
```

Using the **Euler**<sup>2</sup> **formula** \$\$e^{\mathrm {i}\varphi }=\cos \varphi +\mathrm {i}\sin \varphi \$\$, that is known from the course of mathematical analysis, the expression for \$\$p\_+\$\$ can be simplified as: \$\$\begin{aligned} p\_+ = \dfrac{1}{2}(1+\cos \varphi) =\cos ^2(\varphi/2). \end{aligned}\$\$ (3.15)

In the same way, we get the probability of finding the system in the state \$\$\$\left| {-}\right\rangle \$\$: \$\$\begin{aligned} p\_- = \dfrac{1}{2}(1-\cos \varphi) =\sin ^2(\varphi/2). \end{aligned}\$\$\$ (3.16)

In accordance with the law of conservation of total probability, the equality \$\sim\$\$p\_++p\_-=1\$\$ is fulfilled.

It should be noted that measurement in the basis \$\sim\$\$B\_2\$\$ allowed to save information about the value \$\$\varphi \$\$. \$\sim\$\$\square \$\$

Let us consider more complex, two-qubit gates. One of the most important of such elements is the element Controlled NOT (CNOT) . It has two input qubits which are called the **control** and the **controlled** one. The controlled qubit is also known as the **target** qubit.

The circuit representation for the CNOT gate is shown below.

```
../images/505754_1_En_3_Chapter/505754_1_En_3_Figo_HTML.png
```

The upper communication line represents the control qubit, and the lower line represents the target qubit. CNOT functions according to the following rule:

- if the control qubit is set to \$\\$\left| \{1}\right\rangle \$\\$\$, the value of the target qubit is inverted.

As a result, a NOT operation is performed with the target qubit when the first—control—qubit is in the state \$\$\$\\eft| {1}\right\rangle \$\$.

```
The specified rule of state conversion corresponds to the matrix of the CNOT operator $$\begin{aligned} U_{\text{CNOT}}= \Big\{ Degin{bmatrix} 1 & price & pri
```

Following from (3.17), reapplying the CNOT gate returns the two-qubit system to its initial state: the matrix product  $$$U_{\text{CNOT}}\times U_{\text{CNOT}}$$  equals the identity matrix of size  $$$4\times U_{\text{CNOT}}$$ 

### Example 3.4

Let us find a matrix representation of the following quantum circuit:

```
.../images/505754 1 En 3 Chapter/505754 1 En 3 Figp HTML.png
```

Solution. The quantum circuit consists of two elements "Controlled NOT", or as it is also called, "CNOT".

The matrix of the CNOT element has the form (see Table 3.2):

```
$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 0 \\
0 \times mp; \{ \} \ 1 \times mp; \{ \} \ 0 \times mp; \{ \} \ 
\\ 0 & amp; \{\} 0 & amp; \{\} 1 & amp; \{\} 0 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned} $$
(3.18)
Taking into account the CNOT matrix representation, let us calculate how the arbitrary state
$\left| {\psi _1\psi _2}\right\rangle =(u_1\left| {0}\right\rangle +v_1\left|
{1}\right\simeq (u_2\left( 0\right) + v_2\left( 1\right) 
)=a 0\left| {00}\right\rangle +a 1\left| {01}\right\rangle +a 2\left|
{10}\right\rangle +a_3\left| {11}\right\rangle $$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            will change after the action of the
first CNOT:
$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi _1\psi _2}\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} a_0
\ a_1 \ a_2 \ a_3 \ bmatrix} rightarrow \ begin{bmatrix} 1 \ amp;{} 0
amp;{} 0 \mbox{ amp;{} 0 \mbox{ } 0 \mbox{
0 \times mp;{} 0 \times mp;{} 1 \setminus 0 \times mp;{} 1 \times mp;{} 0 \times mp;{} 1 \times mp;{} 0
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a 0 \ a 1 \ a 2 \ a 3 \end{bmatrix}
\begin{array}{l} \begin{bmatrix} a_0 \\ a_1 \\ a_3 \\ a_2 \end{array} \end{array}
(3.19)
This is equivalent to the fact that the states of computational basis (1.5) are converted according to the rule:
$$\begin{aligned} {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \left| {00}\right\rangle
\rightarrow \left| \{00\\right\rangle ,\\ \left| \{01\\right\rangle \right\rangle \ri\
{01}\right\rangle ,\\ \left| {10}\right\rangle \rightarrow \left| {11}\right\rangle
,\\ \left| {11}\right\rangle \rightarrow \left| {10}\right\rangle .
\end{array}\right. \end{aligned}$$
(3.20)
Note that the next CNOT gate takes the input states in the order opposite to the first element. The rule of basis
state conversion in this case is as follows:
$\begin{aligned} {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \left| {00}\right\rangle
\rightarrow \left| \{00\\right\rangle ,\\ \left| \{01\\right\rangle \rightarrow \left|
{11}\right\rangle ,\\ \left| {10}\right\rangle \rightarrow \left| {10}\right\rangle
,\\ \left| {11}\right\rangle \rightarrow \left| {01}\right\rangle .
\end{array}\right. \end{aligned}$$
(3.21)
Therefore, the next stage of the quantum system evolution is described by the matrix
\$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 0 \
0 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 \ 0 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 0 & am
\\ 0 & amp; \{\} 1 & amp; \{\} 0 & amp; \{\} 0 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$
(3.22)
Perform matrix computations:
$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} a 0 \\ a 1 \\ a 3 \\ a 2
\end{bmatrix}\rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;
\{\}\ 0 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{
&{} 0 \\ 0 &{} 1 &{} 0 &{} 0 \end{bmatrix}
\begin{array}{l} \begin{array}{l} a_0 \\ a_1 \\ a_2 \end{array} \end{array}
As a result, the initial state \$ \left| {\psi _1\psi _2}\right\rangle = [a_0,a_1,a_2,a_3]^T$$ will transfer to
$$$[a 0,a 2,a 3,a 1]^T$$. The matrix representation of the analyzed circuit can be written in the following
form:
```

```
$$\begin{aligned} M_W = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 & 0 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{}
```

../images/505754 1 En\_3\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_3\_Figq\_HTML.png

Input state is equal to \$\$\left| {11}\right\rangle \$\$. Determine the state at the output of this circuit.

Solution.

```
After applying the first Hadamard transformation to the upper qubit we obtain
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {11}\right\rangle \rightarrow 1/{\sqrt{2}}(\left|
\{01\}\right\ - \left| \{11\}\right\ ). \end{aligned}$$
(3.25)
Right after the CNOT action, we obtain
$$\begin{aligned} 1/{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {01}\right\rangle - \left|
{11}\right\rangle ) \rightarrow 1/{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {01}\right\rangle - \left|
\{10\}\right\ ight\rangle). \end{aligned}$$
(3.26)
Then there is performed the repeated Hadamard transformation to the upper qubit:
$$\begin{aligned} 1/{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {01}\right\rangle - \left|
{10}\right\rangle ) \rightarrow {}&1/{\sqrt{2}}((\left| {01}\right\rangle
+\left\{11\right\right\} - (\left| \{00\}\right\rangle -\left|
\{10\} \cdot (10) \cdot 
{00}\right\rangle +\left| {01}\right\rangle +\left| {10}\right\rangle +\left|
{11}\right\rangle )/2. \end{aligned}$$
(3.27)
So we get the final result: the state of the circuit output is equal to
$$(-\left| {00}\right\rangle +\left| {01}\right\rangle +\left| {10}\right\rangle
+\left| \{11\}\right|
```

**Theorem of universal set of elements**. Over a system consisting of n qubits, using only one-qubit elements and CNOT elements it is possible to implement an arbitrary unitary operation.

The proof of this important result is presented in works  $[\underline{6}-\underline{8}]$ .

## References

```
    1. 1.
        Steane A (1988) Quantum computing. Rep Prog Phys 61(2):117–173

    2. 2.
        Williams CP (2011) Explorations in quantum computing, 2nd edn. (Series: Texts in computer science). Springer, xxii, 717 p

    3. 3.
        Zapryagaev SA (2015) Introduction to quantum information systems [in Russian] (Series: Voronezh state university textbook). VSU Publishing House, Voronezh, 219 p

    4. 4.
```

Nielsen MA, Chuang IL (2010) Quantum computation and quantum information. 10th anniversary edition. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, xxxi, 676 p

5. 5.

Kitaev AYu, Shen AH, Vyalyi MN (2002) Classical and quantum computation (Series: Graduate studies in mathematics, vol 47). American Mathematical Society, 257 p

6, 6,

Deutsch D (1995) Universality in quantum computation. Proc R Soc Lond Ser A 449:669–677

7. 7.

DiVincenzo DP (1995) Two-bit gates are universal for quantum computation. Phys Rev A 50(2):1015

8. 8.

Lloyd S (1995) Almost any quantum logic gate is universal. Phys Rev Lett 75(2):346–349

## Footnotes

1

Jacques Salomon Hadamard (1865–1963).

2

Leonhard Euler (1707–1783).

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2021

S. Kurgalin, S. BorzunovConcise Guide to Quantum ComputingTexts in Computer Science<a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0">https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0</a> 4

# 4. Entangled States

Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1</sup> - and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1</sup> - (1) Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia

Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)

Email: <a href="mailto:kurgalin@bk.ru">kurgalin@bk.ru</a>

Sergei Borzunov

Email: <a href="mailto:sborzunov@gmail.com">sborzunov@gmail.com</a>

Let us consider an important case of a two-qubit system state, whose wave function is equal to

\$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle =\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {00}\right\rangle +\left| {11}\right\rangle ). \end{aligned}\$\$ (4.1)

This state is called the  $Bell^{\underline{1}}$  state. In this state, when measuring the first qubit, two results are possible:

- \$\square\$\$M=0\$\$ with the probability \$\square\$\$p=1/2\$\$, and final state \$\square\$\$\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle =\left| {00}\right\rangle \$\$;
- \$\square\$\$M=1\$\$ with the same probability \$\square\$\$p=1/2\$\$, and final state \$\square\$\$\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle =\left| {11}\right\rangle \$\$.

Measuring the second qubit always gives the same result as measuring the first qubit.

To prepare the state (4.1), one can use the following quantum circuit:

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_4\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_4\_Figa\_HTML.p

At the first stage of this circuit, the Hadamard transformation converts the upper qubit into a superposition state

\$\$(\left| {0}\right\rangle +\left| {1}\right\rangle )/\sqrt{2}\$\$. At the next stage, this superposition moves to the control input of the CNOT gate, and the target qubit is inverted if and only if the control qubit value is equal to one.

Using the matrix approach, we determine the state at the output of the circuit. At the input, we have

\$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \left| {0}\right\rangle \left| {0}\right\rangle = \left| {0}\right\rangle = \left| {0}\right\rangle = \left| {0}\right\rangle \left| {0}\right\rangle

Let us apply the Hadamard transformation to the first qubit:

\$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \rightarrow U\_H\times \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \end{bmatrix} = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} -1 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \end{bmatrix} = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}\$\$ (4.3)

The state of the second qubit has not yet changed and is described by the vector \$\$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}\$\$. The vector of the whole system is

 $$$ \left\{ \left( \frac{1}{\left( 1}\right)}\right)}{\left( \frac{1}{\left( \frac{1}{\left( \frac{1}{\left( \frac{1}{\left( \frac{1}{\left( \frac{1}{\left( \frac{1}{\left( \frac{1}{\left( \frac{1}{\left$ 

Then we calculate the result of the controlled NOT:

```
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle \rightarrow \left| {\psi
 '\right\rangle = U_{\text{CNOT}} \cdot \frac{1}{sqrt{2} \cdot 0}
 1/\sqrt{2} \le 0 \le 1/\sqrt{2} \le 0 \le 1/\sqrt{2} \le 1/
 &{} 0 \ 0 \ amp;{} 1 \ amp;{} 0 \ amp;
  \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 1 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \& amp; \{\}\ 0 \setminus bmatrix\}
 \times \mathbb{1} = \mathbb{1} 
 \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ 
\end{aligned}$$
(4.5)
 We obtain the wave function
 $\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle =(\left| {00}\right\rangle +\left|
  \{11\}\right\rangle \)\\sqrt\{2\}$$
 Note. The set consisting of four wave functions
 $$\begin{aligned}&\left| {\beta _1}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}
 {\sqrt{2}}(\left| {00}\right\rangle +\left| {11}\right\rangle ),\nonumber
 {01}\right\rangle +\left| {10}\right\rangle ),\nonumber \\&\left| {\beta
 _3\\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {00}\right\rangle -\left|
 {11}\right\rangle ),\nonumber \\&\left| {\beta _4}\right\rangle =
 \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| \{01\}\right| -\left| \{10\}\right| )
\end{aligned}$$
 (4.6)
 is called the Bell basis. Elements | $\left| {\beta _1}\right\rangle $$-
 $\left| {\beta 4}\right\rangle $$ of this set are hence called Bell states.
 By direct checking (see Exercise 56), it is easy to make sure that they form
 an orthonormalized basis.
```

The Bell state

\$\$\left| {\beta \_1}\right\rangle =\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {00}\right\rangle +\left| {11}\right\rangle )\$\$ is a simple example of entangled states.

**Entangled states** are those states of the quantum system in which qubits interact with each other, and a description of its state with the product of wave functions of independent qubits is impossible.

```
We prove the entanglement of the state
$$\psi =(\left| {00}\right\rangle +\left| {11}\right\rangle )/\sqrt{2}$$ as
follows. Suppose that there is a possibility to represent $\sim$$\psi $$ as a
product of wave functions of non-interacting qubits:
$$\begin{aligned} \exists u_1, v_1, u_2, v_2\in \mathbb {C}:\quad \left|
{ \dot } = (u_1\left| \{0\}\right| + v_1\left| \{1\}\right| 
(u_2\left\{0\right\}\right\} = u_2\left\{1\right\}\right\}. \end{aligned}
(4.7)
The complex parameters $\oint$$\su_$$u_1$$, $\oint$$$\su_$$v_1$$, $\oint$$$$$\oint$$$$$$ and
$$$v 2$$ have the meaning of amplitudes in the superposition of basis
states. Let us set the constraints to which these parameters must satisfy. To
do this, remove the parentheses in (4.7):
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = u_1u_2\left|
{0}\right\rangle \left| {0}\right\rangle +u_1v_2\left| {0}\right\rangle \left|
{1}\right\rangle +u_2v_1\left| {1}\right\rangle \left| {0}\right\rangle
+v_1v_2\left| {1}\right\rangle \left| {1}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}$$
(4.8)
We obtain a system of equations regarding complex values $\overline{\circ}$$u 1$$,
■$$v 1$$, ■$$u 2$$, and ■$$v 2$$:
$\begin{aligned} {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} u_1u_2=\dfrac{1}}
{\q 0,\ u_2v_1=\q 0,\ u_2v_2=\dfrac{1}}
(4.9)
Since the second equation of the system \sqrt{$$$$}$$u_1v_2 = 0$$ causes
\mathbb{Z}$u 1 u 2 = 0$$ or \mathbb{Z}$v 1 v 2 = 0$$, the system is incompatible and
the set of its solutions is empty. Consequently, there are no such wave
functions whose product corresponds to the state
$$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle $$. This proves the entanglement of the Bell
state.
```

In entangled states, there are manifested correlations that do not have classical analogues.

The introduced Bell state above is sometimes called the **EPR pair** after Einstein,  $\frac{2}{3}$  Podolsky  $\frac{3}{3}$ , and Rosen,  $\frac{4}{3}$  who studied similar states at the stage of the formation of quantum theory  $\left[\frac{1}{4}\right]$ .

In a mental experiment, considered in [1], there was analyzed the decomposition of some particle *c* into two identical particles *a* and *b*. According to the law of momentum conservation of an isolated quantum-mechanical system, the impulses of the formed particles \$\\$\varvec{p}\_a\$\$ and \$\\$\varvec{p}\_b\$\$ are correlated with the impulse of the initial \$\\$\varvec{p}\_c\$\$ by the following relation: \$\\$\begin{aligned} \varvec{p}\_a + \varvec{p}\_b = \varvec{p}\_c. \end{aligned}\$\$\$ (4.10)

Note that the states \$\\$\left| {a}\right\rangle \$\$\$ and \$\\$\left| {b}\right\rangle \$\$\$ are entangled and form an EPR pair.

Let us measure the impulse of the particle *a*. Thus, it is possible to calculate the impulse of another particle *b* without performing the procedure of its interaction with the classical instrument:

\$\$\varvec{p}\_b = \varvec{p}\_c - \varvec{p}\_a\$\$. Having further measured the coordinate of the particle b, we obtain for this particle certain values of both impulses and coordinates, which contradicts the bases of quantum mechanics, in particular, the Heisenberg uncertainty principle. Moreover, in this mental experiment, measuring the impulse of one of the particles is equivalent to measuring the impulse of the other. In return, from the point of view of the authors of the paper [1], it contradicts the general physical principle of causality.

In the described EPR experiment, after measuring the impulse \$\$\varvec{p}\_a\$\$, the second particle goes to the state with a certain impulse. Measuring the coordinate of a particle b will lead to the fact that as a result of the interaction with the classical instrument, its impulse, in general, will change. Consequently, the simultaneous measurement of the coordinate and the impulse in this experiment is not performed.

The second particle b gets a certain impulse immediately after the measurement made over the particle a, even if the particles are spatially separated by a large distance. It follows that quantum theory has the property of **nonlocality** [5, 6].

**No-cloning theorem**. *It is impossible to create an exact copy of an arbitrary unknown quantum state.* 

The reasoning will follow the paper [7] (see also [8]). We use the method of proving "by contradiction".

Suppose we need to create an exact copy of the system S that is in the state \$\$ \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$. We denote the backup system that will be used to record and store the state \$\$ \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ by T; let it initially be in state \$\$ \left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \$\$.

The system is in general, as easy to see, in a state with the wave function \$\\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \end{aligned}\$\$ (4.11)

Suppose there is a unitary transformation \$\\$\U\_X\\$\\$ that allows us to write in \$\\$\left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \$\\$ an exact copy of the initial state \$\\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\\$:

\$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \right\rangle \left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \left| {\psi }\ri

Let us choose two arbitrary states of the system *S*, for example,

- \$\$\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle \$\$ and \$\$\$\left| {\psi ''}\right\rangle \$\$. The action of a unitary transformation \$\$\$U\_X\$\$ in these cases can be represented as follows:
- \$\$\begin{aligned}&\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle \left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \right\rangle \left| {\psi '}\right\rangle \left| {\psi '}\right\rangle \left| {\psi '}\right\rangle \right\rangle \right\rangle \right\rangle \right\rangle \right\rangle \right\rangle \left| {\psi ''}\right\rangle \left| {\

The main idea to prove the no-cloning theorem is to apply \$\operaturne{\operat

 \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \right\rangle \left| {\psi '}\right\rangle +v\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle \left| {\p

But the result required is different from (4.14):

\$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \left| {\Lambda }\right\rangle \right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle +v\left| {\psi "}\right\rangle ) (u\left| {\psi "}\right\rangle +v\left| {\psi "}\right\rangle \left| {\psi "}\right\rangle \left| {\psi "}\right\rangle \left| {\psi "}\right\rangle +\left| {\psi "}\right\rangle \left| {\psi "}\right\rangle \left|

Thus, the assumption that the operation \$\osepsilon\$\$\$U\_X\$\$ can clone an arbitrary quantum state is not correct. The no-cloning theorem is proved.

Note that although it is impossible to create copies of unknown arbitrary quantum states, a copy of known states can often be obtained quite easily. For example, knowing that a qubit is converted to the state \$\$ \left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$ or \$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$, measuring this state will give one classic bit of information \$\$\$M=0\$ or \$\$\$M=1\$. Using M, it is possible to form copies of the state \$\$\$\left| {M\right\rangle \$\$ based on ancillary qubits.

# Example 4.1

The set of qubits is brought to the state \$\\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{3}(\left| {001}\right\rangle +\left| {010}\right\rangle +\sqrt{7}\left| {100}\right\rangle ). \end{aligned}\$\$ (4.16)

With what probability will the result of the measurement of the first qubit be \$\\$\left| \{1}\right\rangle \$\\$?

# Solution.

Let us write the decomposition \$\square\$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ on a computational basis:

```
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = {\&a_0\left| {000}\right\rangle + a_1\left| {001}\right\rangle + a_2\left| {010}\right\rangle + a_3\left| {011}\right\rangle {\}\nonumber \\{\}+ {\}\&{\} a_4\left| {100}\right\rangle + a_5\left| {101}\right\rangle + a_6\left| {110}\right\rangle + a_7\left| {111}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}$$ (4.17) The result of the measurement of the first qubit, equal to $$\left| {1}\right\rangle $$, will be obtained with a probability $$$p=|a_4|^2+|a_5|^2+|a_6|^2+|a_7|^2$$. Taking into account the equalities $$$a_4=\sqrt{7}/3$$ and $$$s_5=a_6=a_7=0$$, we obtain $$$p=7/9$$. $$$square $$
```

It is proved that the entanglement of a quantum state is not a necessary condition for the possibility of conducting quantum calculations with its help. Using unentangled systems for calculations, many quantum algorithms, however, demonstrate less asymptotic complexity in comparison with classical methods of solution [9, 10].

## References

- 1. 1.
  - Einstein A, Podolsky B, Rosen N (1935) Can quantum-mechanical description of physical reality be considered complete? Phys Rev 47:777–780
- 2. 2. Bohr N (1935) Can quantum-mechanical description of physical reality be considered complete? Phys Rev 48:696–702
- 3. 3. Furry WH (1936) Note on the quantum-mechanical theory of measurement. Phys Rev 49:393–399
- 4. 4. Furry WH (1936) Remark on measurements in quantum theory. Phys Rev 49:476
- 5. 5. Uola R, Costa ACS, Nguyen HC, Gühne O (2020) Quantum steering. Rev Modern Phys 92(1):015001-1–015001-40 6. 6.

Wharton KB, Argaman N (2020) Colloquium: Bell's theorem and locally mediated reformulations of quantum mechanics. Rev Modern Phys 92(2):021002-1–021002-23

7. 7.

Wootters WK, Zurek WH (1982) A single quantum cannot be cloned. Nature 299:802–803

8.8.

Dieks D (1982) Communication by EPR devices. Phys Lett A 92(6):271–272

9.9.

Biham E, Brassard G, Kenigsberg D, Mor T (2004) Quantum computing without entanglement. Theor Comput Sci 320:15–33

10. 10.

Horodecki R, Horodecki P, Horodecki M, Horodecki K (2009) Quantum entanglement. Rev Modern Phys 81(2):865–942

## **Footnotes**

<u>1</u>

John Stewart Bell (1928–1990).

<u>2</u>

Albert Einstein (1879–1955).

3

Boris Yakovlevich Podolsky (1896–1966).

<u>4</u>

Nathan Rosen (1909–1995).

Werner Karl Heisenberg (1901–1976).

# 5. Quantum Teleportation

Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1 ⊠</sup> and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1 ⊠</sup>

(1) Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia

**Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)** 

Email: kurgalin@bk.ru

**Sergei Borzunov** 

Email: sborzunov@gmail.com

Suppose that two physical laboratories, denoted by *A* and *B*, are conducting research in the field of quantum computing. There is an important result that shows the following: it is possible to transfer from lab *A* to lab *B* an arbitrary qubit

\$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle =u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$

Now we show how to realize it. The initial state of the quantum system is as follows:

\$\$\begin{aligned} (u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left| {1}\right\rangle ) (\left| {00}\right\rangle +\left| {11}\right\rangle )/\sqrt{2}. (5.1) \end{aligned}\$\$

To be specific, we will assume that the first qubit in the EPR pair is in lab A, the second one is in lab B. Note that the coefficients u and v are unknown to every one of the researchers.

To transfer information, the CNOT operation over the two qubits in *A*, which are combined using a curly bracket in the scheme below, is

performed. Then, the Hadamard transformation on the first qubit is performed.

At the next stage, two qubits in *A* are measured in a computational basis. The measurement results form two classic bits, which are sent to *B*.

In lab B, an unknown state \$ \$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ is restored based on information in the form of classic bits using the following scheme [1, 2]:

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_5\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_5\_Figa\_HTML.png

Thus, the quantum state has been transferred from one laboratory to another in the absence of a quantum channel between the sender and the recipient, i.e. **quantum teleportation** is performed.

Note that quantum teleportation does not contradict the theorem about the impossibility of copying an arbitrary state, because in laboratory A the state \$ \$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ will be lost and the corresponding qubit will be converted to the state \$ \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$ or \$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$.

# **Example 5.1** The physical laboratory *A* has prepared a two-qubit state

\$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = u\left| {0}\right\rangle (5.2) + v\left| {1}\right\rangle \end{aligned}\$\$ with some complex coefficients u and v that meet the normalization condition \$\$|u|^2+|v|^2=1\$\$. The Hadamard operator was applied to the first qubit and then it was measured. Let us define the state of the second qubit after the mentioned actions.

## Solution.

The action of the Hadamard operator will put the system in the state

- \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi '}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (u\left| {00}\right\rangle +v\left| {01}\right\rangle +v\left| (5.3) {10}\right\rangle -v\left| {11}\right\rangle ). \end{aligned}\$\$

  Next, consider two cases.
  - 1. The result of measuring the first qubit  $\geqslant$  \$\$M = 0\$\$.

Then the system state after measurement is described by the wave function

- \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle (u\left| {0}\right\rangle + v\left| {1}\right\rangle )\$\$
- . Therefore, the second qubit is in the state
- \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle (u\left| {0}\right\rangle + v\left| {1}\right\rangle )\$\$
  - 2. The result of measuring the first qubit 🖳 \$M = 1\$. In this case, the second qubit is in the state
- $\$ (u\left| {0}\right\rangle v\left| {1}\right\rangle )\$\$. As a result, let us write the final answer: the state of the second qubit after measuring the first one is
- $\$ (u\left| {0}\right\rangle + (-1)^M v\left| {1}\right\rangle )\$\$.
- \$\$\square \$\$

# References

- 1. Bennett CH, Brassard G, Crépeau C et al (1993) Teleporting an unknown quantum state via dual classical and Einstein-Podolsky-Rosen channels. Phys Rev Lett 70(13):1895-1899
- 2. Nielsen MA, Chuang IL (2010) Quantum computation and quantum information, 10th anniversary edition. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, xxxi, 676 p

# 6. Universal Elements of Quantum Circuits

Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1 ⊠</sup> and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1 ⊠</sup>
(1) Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia

□ Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)

Email: kurgalin@bk.ru

⊠ Sergei Borzunov

Email: sborzunov@gmail.com

We will need some definitions from Boolean algebra for further description. Recall the main definitions [1, 2].

A **Boolean**<sup>1</sup> **variable** p can take the values 0 or 1 (and only them),  $\geqslant$  \$\$p\in \mathbb {B}\equiv \{0,1\}\$\$.

**Boolean algebra** is a set \$\\$\mathbb{B}\$\$\$ with operations of disjunction (\$\beta\$ \$\$\vec{\$\$}\conjunction (\$\beta\$ \$\$\wedge \$\$), and negation (\$\beta\$ \$\$\overline{\phinantom {a}}\$\$) defined on it.

The effect of the main operations on the Boolean variables is presented in Table 6.1.

A **Boolean expression** is constructed from Boolean variables using the operations \$\$\sqrt{y}\$ \$\$\sqrt{y}\$ \$\$.

- \$\$\wedge \$\$, \$\infty \$\$\overline{\phantom {a}},\$\$ and brackets. The expression of the form
- \$\$x\_1\wedge x\_2\$\$ is sometimes written as
- ../images/505754\_1\_En\_6\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_6\_IEq26\_HTML.gif or simply \$\overline\$ \$\$x\_1 x\_2\$\$.

The collection \$ \$\$\mathbf {x}=(x\_1,x\_2,\dots,x\_n)\$\$, where \$ \$\$x\_i\in \{0,1\}\$\$,

- \$\$1\leqslant i\leqslant n\$\$, is called the **Boolean tuple (vector)**. The elements of the tuple are **components**, or **coordinates**. The function \$\$f:\mathbb {B}^n\rightharpow \mathbb {B}\$\$, where
- \$ \$\$f(x 1,\dots ,x n)\$\$ is a Boolean expression, is called the **Boolean function**.

One of the ways to define a Boolean function  $\[ \]$  \$\$f(\mathbf {x})\$\$ is by the table of values (Table 6.2). This table is also called **truth table**. As is easy to see, the number of rows in the table is  $\[ \]$  \$\$2^n\$\$, where n is the number of components of the vector  $\[ \]$  \$\$\mathbf{x}\$\$.

There is also used a method of defining a function with a vector of values

- \$\$\varvec{\alpha }=(\alpha \_0,\alpha \_1,\dots ,\alpha \_{2^n-1})\$\$, where the coordinate \$\$\alpha \_i\$\$ is equal to the value of the function on the tuple of variables located in the *i*th row,
- \$\$0\legslant i\legslant 2\n-1\$\$.

Table 6.3 lists all functions from \$\sim\$ \$\$P\_2(2)\$\$. The symbols \$\sim\$ \$\$\downarrow \$\$", "|", "

\$\$\oplus \$\$", "\oplus \$\$", and \$\$\rightarrow \$\$", and \$\$\rightarrow \$\$" are notations for combinations of disjunction, conjunction, and negation .

Table 6.1 Negation, disjunction, and conjunction

../images/505754\_1\_En\_6\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_6\_Tab1\_HTML.png

**Table 6.2** Table of values of function \$\$\$f(\mathbf {x})\$\$

\$\$x_1\$\$	\$\$x_2\$\$	\$\$\dots \$\$	\$\$x_{n-1}\$\$	\$\$x_n\$\$	\$\$f(x_1,x_2,\dots ,\$\$ \$\$x_{n-1},x_n)\$\$
0	0	\$\$\dots \$\$	0	0	\$\$f(0,0,\dots ,0,0)\$\$
0	0	\$\$\dots \$\$	0	1	\$\$f(0,0,\dots ,0,1)\$\$
0	0	\$\$\dots \$\$	1	0	\$\$f(0,0,\dots ,1,0)\$\$
1	1	\$\$\dots \$\$	1	1	\$\$f(1,1,\dots ,1,1)\$\$

Table 6.3 Functions of two arguments

Notation	0	\$\$x_1\wedge x_2\$\$

No <b>\$\$ti</b> on 1\$\$	\$\$x_ 2\$\$	<u>0</u> :\$\$f_0\$\$	\$\$x_1\wedge x_2\$\$
0 \$\$x_	0 \$\$x_		
<b>Q\$\$</b>	2\$\$	0	0
1	0	0	0
1	1	0	1
Notation		\$\$\overline{(x_2\rightarrow x_1)}\$\$	\$\$x_2\$\$
\$\$x_ 1\$\$	\$\$x_ 2\$\$	\$\$f_4\$\$	\$\$f_5\$\$
0	0	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	0
1	1	0	1
Notation		/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_IEq79_HTML. gif	/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_IEq gif
\$\$x_ 1\$\$	\$\$x_ 2\$\$	\$\$f_8\$\$	\$\$f_9\$\$
0	0	1	1
0	1	0	0
1	0	0	0
1	1	0	1
Notation		,/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_IEq89_HTML.gif	/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_IEq gif
\$\$x_ 1\$\$	\$\$x_ 2\$\$	\$\$\$f_{12}\$\$	\$\$f_{13}\$\$
0	0	1	1
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	0
1	1	0	1

The functions listed in Table 6.3 are widespread and many of them have special names, for example: Peirce's arrow ( \$\$\downarrow \$\$), Sheffer stroke (|), addition modulo two ( \$\$\oplus \$\$), logical equivalence ( \$\$\left{sheff}\$), and implication ( \$\$\sqrt{sheff}\$).

**Elementary conjunction**, or **minterm**, is a conjunction of n various Boolean variables or their negations \$\$x\_1^{\sigma\_1}\leq x\_2^{\sigma\_2} \, where \$\$n\geq 1\$\$ and  $x_n^{\sigma_1}$ \$

 $$$ \left( x_i^{\sigma_i} = \left( \frac{x_i}{\alpha_i} \right) \right) \le x_i^{\sigma_i} = \left( \frac{x_i,\quad i_i \in \mathbb{R} \right) } \end{aligned}$ 

The number of variables is called the **rank** of an elementary conjunction. Elementary conjunction is called **monotone**, if it contains no negations of variables. Elementary conjunction takes a value equal to 1 on only one set of arguments' values. Therefore, an arbitrary function that is not identically equal to zero can be represented as a disjunction of elementary conjunctions. An expression of the form

**Example 6.1** Let us build the perfect disjunctive normal form of the function defined by the vector of values \$\\$\varvec{\alphalpha}\_f=(1011\;0011)\$\$.

#### Solution.

The function  $\$\$f(x_1,x_2,x_3)\$\$$  takes value equal to 1 on the following tuples of arguments  $\$\$(x_1,x_2,x_3)\$\$$ :

\$\$\begin{aligned} (0,0,0),\, (0,1,0),\, (0,1,1),\, (1,1,0),\, (1,1,1). \end{aligned}\$\$

We combine the corresponding elementary conjunctions and obtain the perfect disjunctive normal form:

$$$$\left[x_1\circ x_1 \exp(x)_1\circ x_1 \exp(x)_1 \exp($$

\$\$\square \$\$

The set of Boolean functions is called **universal for classical calculations**, if an arbitrary Boolean function can be expressed using functions from this set. Here are some examples of universal sets.

- (2) **Reed**<sup>2</sup>–**Muller**<sup>3</sup> **basis**, or **Zhegalkin** <sup>4</sup> **basis** \$\{\oplus ,\wedge ,1\}\$\$, also satisfies the introduced definition and therefore is universal in terms of classical calculations. In particular, the Boolean functions
- \$\$g(x\_1,x\_2,x\_3)=(x\_1\wedge x\_2)\oplus (x\_1\downarrow x\_3)\$\$ and
- $\$  \$\$h(x\_1,x\_2,x\_3,x\_4)=\overline{(x\_1\rightarrow x\_2)}\rightarrow can be represented as follows: (x\_3\leftrightarrow x\_4)\$\$
- \$\$\begin{aligned} g(x\_1,x\_2,x\_3)&= 1\oplus x\_1\oplus x\_3\oplus x\_1 x\_2\oplus x\_1 x\_3, \end{aligned}\$\$ (6.4)
- \$\$\begin{aligned} h(x\_1,x\_2,x\_3,x\_4)&= 1\oplus x\_1 x\_3\oplus x\_1 x\_4\oplus x\_1 x\_2 x\_3 \oplus x\_1 x\_2 x\_4. \end{aligned}\$\$ (6.5)
- (3) A single-element set  $\mathbb{Z}$  \$\$\{|\}\$\$ is universal, where "|" is Sheffer <sup>5</sup> stroke, operating in accordance with the rule  $\mathbb{Z}$  \$\$x\_1|x\_2=\overline{x\_1\wedge x\_2}\$\$. As is known, this operation corresponds to the element NAND in the theory of classical logical circuits. Let us note that with the combination of only NAND elements, it is possible to implement the computation of an arbitrary Boolean function if it is possible to copy the bit [3].

But, for example, the set \$\\$\oplus, \vee, \wedge \}\$\$ is not universal, because the constant 1 cannot be expressed using only conjunction, disjunction, and addition modulo two.

In this section, we introduce two more quantum logic gates with the following property—each of them is universal for classical computations. Note that as an additional condition, we assume the possibility to include auxiliary inputs whose initial states are set to \$ \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$ or \$ \$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$ as needed.

Table 6.4 represents universal quantum gates that transform the state of three qubits.

Table 6.4 Three qubits operations

Name	Notation	Matrix
Toffoli gate	,/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_Figa_HTML.png	See formula (6.6)
Fredkin gate	/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_Figb_HTML.png	See formula (6.8)

The **Toffoli** <sup>6</sup> **gate** is a quantum gate with three inputs and outputs that takes the input states

- \$\$\left| {\psi \_1}\right\rangle \$\$, \$\ \$\$\left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle \$\$, and
- \$\$\left| {\psi \_3}\right\rangle \$\$ and inverts the state \$\$\left| {\psi \_3}\right\rangle \$\$ if and only if both first states are equal to \$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$ (and does nothing otherwise) [4].

Let us prove the universality of the Toffoli gate. Following from the definition, the first and second qubits on the input and output do not change. The third qubit in the output has the form

- \$\$\left| {\psi \_1}\right\rangle \$\$, \$ \$\$\left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle \$\$ and auxiliary qubit
- \$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$ be submitted to the gate input, respectively. So in the output, we will have the states \$\$\left| {\psi \_1}\right\rangle \$\$, \$\$\left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle \$\$, and
- \$\$\left| {1\oplus (\psi \_1\wedge \psi \_2)}\right\rangle \$\$. The last of these states, as can be easily seen, can be represented as \$\$\left| {(\overline{\psi \_1\wedge \psi \_2})}\right\rangle \$\$, or
- \$\$\left| {(\psi \_1\text { NAND }\psi \_2)}\right\rangle \$\$. You can see that in this case, the Sheffer stroke is

implemented, which as shown above on page 30, forms a universal set of functions. Consequently, the Toffoli gate is universal.

The Toffoli gate matrix looks as follows:

```
 \begin{aligned} $U_{\text{CCNOT}} = \begin{array}{l} 0 \times 1 & amp; \\ 0 \times amp; \\
```

By combining different input states, we can obtain the following functions:

\$\$\begin{aligned}&\left| {\psi \_1}\right\rangle =\left| {1}\right\rangle ,\left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle =\left| {1}\right\rangle ,\left| {\psi \_3\oplus (\psi \_1\wedge \psi \_2)}\right\rangle =\sigma \_1\left| {\psi \_3}\right\rangle ,\left| {\psi \_3}\right\rangle ,\left| {\psi \_3}\right\rangle ,\left| {\psi \_3}\right\rangle ,\left| {\psi \_3}\right\rangle \psi \_2}\right\rangle =\left| {0}\right\rangle ,\left| {\psi \_3\oplus (\psi \_1\wedge \psi \_2)}\right\rangle =\left| {\psi \_1\wedge \psi \_2}\right\rangle =\left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle =\left| {\psi \_1\wedge \psi \_2}\right\rangle \psi \_1\wedge \psi \_2\right\rangle \psi \_1\wedge \psi \_1\wedg

We can see that the gate executes the operations of negation, disjunction, and addition modulo two depending on different values of states on the inputs.

With the help of Toffoli gate, two CNOTs, and one auxiliary qubit in the state \$\infty\$ \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$, it is possible to implement the disjunction:

```
.../images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_Figc_HTML.png
```

The **Fredkin** <sup>7</sup> **gate** is designated as Controlled SWAP (CSWAP) [5]. This gate has three inputs and three outputs. The first input is the control input, the other two are controlled inputs:

- if the control qubit equals \$\infty\$ \$\$\left| \{0\\right\\rangle \\$\\$\$, the controlled qubits do not change;
- if the control qubit is set to \$\infty \\$\left| \{1}\right\rangle \\$\$, then the values of the controlled qubits are exchanged (SWAP operation in relation to the controlled qubits).

The control line signal remains unchanged in any case. Let us write a matrix representation of the Fredkin gate:

```
 \begin{aligned} $$ \left U_{\text{CSWAP}} = \left \| \text{begin} \right 1 & mp; {} 0 & p; {} 0
```

It is often useful to use an analytic view to describe the action of the Fredkin gate on the initial state \$\$ \left| \left( psi\_{\left( n\right)} \right)\right| < c, q\_1, c, q\_2\right| < \$\$

One of the properties of the CSWAP element is also that the number of input states equal to \$\$\left\{1}\right\rangle \$\$ does not change as a result of its application.

The state of the state of the state of the state of the application.

The Fredkin gate is universal, as can be seen from the following particular cases of output values:

(6.11)

- \$\$\begin{aligned}&q\_2=0: \qquad \qquad U\_{\text {CSWAP}}\left| {c q\_1 0}\right\rangle =\left| {c, \overline{c}q\_1, cq\_1}\right\rangle \!, q\_2\rightarrow c\wedge q\_1; \end{aligned}\$\$
- \$\$\begin{aligned}&q\_2=1: \qquad \qquad U\_{\text {CSWAP}}\left| {c q\_1 1}\right\rangle = \left| {c, \overline{c}q\_1 \oplus c, cq\_1 \oplus \overline{c}}\right\rangle \!, q\_1\rightarrow c\vee q\_1. \end{aligned}\$\$\$

  \[
  \] \left| \{c q\_1 1}\right\rangle \\ \!, q\_1\right\rangle \\ \!, q\_1\right\

Relations (6.10)–(6.11) show that implementations of operations such as negation, conjunction, and disjunction are available, i.e. a full set of Boolean functions is formed.

For many quantum algorithms, gates of controlled unitary operations are used, where some unitary transformation U over several qubits is performed or is not performed depending on the state of the control qubit set. The schematic representation of such gates is similar to that of a Toffoli gate (see Fig. 6.1).

*Fig. 6.1* Controlled unitary operation *U* 

- For example, Fig. 6.1 shows a 4-qubit unitary operation gate U, controlled by three qubits \$\$\left| {c\_1}\right\rangle \$\$, \$\$\left| {c\_2}\right\rangle \$\$, and \$\$\$\$\$ \$\$\left| {c\_3}\right\rangle \$\$. It is not difficult to construct the matrix representation of gates, controlled by a set of qubits. For example, in the matrix representation, the gate of some two-qubit unitary operation U controlled by N qubits has the form:
- \$\begin{aligned} U\_{\text {NContrU}} = \left. \begin{bmatrix} 1 &{} 0 &{} 0 &{} \\cdots &{} 0 &{} 0 \\ 0 &{} 0 &{} 1 &{} 0 &

**Example 6.2** Let us show that the quantum circuit having four qubits \$\\$\left| \{q\_1\\right\rangle \\$\-\\$\\left| \{q\_4\\right\rangle \\$\\$\.

performs a SWAP operation on the third and fourth qubits controlled by the first and second qubits. In other words, such a circuit can be represented as

Solution.

Let us make a table of qubit states in the process of time evolution.

Table 6.5 Qubits states

Step 0	Step 1	Step 2
\$\$q_ 1\$\$	\$\$q_1\$\$	\$\$q_1\$\$
\$\$q_ 2\$\$	/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_IEq151_HTML. gif	/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_IEq152_HTN gif
\$\$q_ 3\$\$	\$\$q_3\$\$	/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_IEq156_HTN gif
\$\$q_ 4\$\$	\$\$q_4\$\$	/images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_IEq160_HTN gif
0	\$\$q_1 q_2\$\$	\$\$q_1 q_2\$\$

From Table 6.5, you can see that if the first and second qubits are simultaneously in the state \$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$, the states of the third and fourth qubits are exchanged. Otherwise, all states remain the same. \$\$\square \$\$

**Example 6.3** Using Toffoli gates and one auxiliary qubit \$\\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$, let us build a quantum circuit for the NOT operation controlled by three qubits.

Solution.

Let us denote auxiliary qubits by \$\$c\_1\$\$, \$\$c\_2\$\$, and \$\$c\_3\$\$. In order to build a quantum operation NOT controlled by these qubits, first calculate the conjunction \$\$c\_1\wedge c\_2\$\$. This can be done with the help of one Toffoli gate. The result of the calculation will be written down using an auxiliary qubit. Next, using another Toffoli gate with control qubits \$\$\left| {c\_1c\_2}\right\rangle \$\$, \$\$\left| {c\_3}\right\rangle \$\$ and controlled qubit \$\$\$\left| {q}\right\rangle \$\$ will lead to the desired state \$\$\$\left| {q\oplus c\_1c\_2c\_3}\right\rangle \$\$. Finally, the last gate returns the auxiliary qubit to its initial state.

Represent the proposed quantum circuit:

Note that the proposed procedure for building the NOT operation allows a generalization in case of an arbitrary finite number n of control qubits. In fact, the quantum circuit for operation

../images/505754\_1\_En\_6\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_6\_IEq175\_HTML.gi is built from two symmetrically f

arranged circuits for .../images/505754\_1\_En\_6\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_6\_IEq176\_HTML.gi and one Toffoli

gate placed in the center. Exercise 49 shows that such a circuit will contain an exponential number of elementary gates. Despite this, by applying more auxiliary qubits, it is easy to achieve a linear complexity of the circuit for operation .../images/505754\_1\_En\_6\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_6\_IEq177\_HTML.gi [4]. \$\$\square \$\$ f

The implementation of unitary transformations with many qubits brings significant challenges to researchers from an experimental point of view. Therefore, it is of interest to make quantum circuits from the simplest, for example, single- and two-qubit elements. Let us show that the universal Toffoli and Fredkin gates are easy to express through the composition of simpler gates.

The following two circuits use a unitary transformation *Q* with a matrix:

This property is called the "square root of inversion", \$\\$\sqrt{\text {NOT}}}\$\$. It is easy to check the unitarity of the introduced operator:

 $\{\}\ 2 \neq \{bmatrix\} = \{bmatrix\}\ 1 \otimes mp; \{\}\ 0 \setminus 0 \otimes mp; \{\}\ 1 \neq \{bmatrix\}. \}$ 

#### Implementation of the Toffoli gate

To prove that the above quantum circuit implements the Toffoli gate, let us note the following.

- (1) If the first qubit is in the state  $\$  \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$\$, then as a result, the identity operator I or product of operators  $\$  \$\$QQ^{\dag} }\$\$ affects the third qubit. Due to the unitarity of
- \$\$QQ^{\dag }\equiv I\$\$, the third qubit does not change.
- (2) If the first qubit is in the state \$\$\left| {1}\right\rangle \$\$, and the second qubit is in the state \$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$, then, analogous to the first case, \$\$Q^{\dag }Q\$\$ affects the third qubit. The state of the third qubit is not affected.
  - (3) Finally, if the states of the upper qubits are \$\infty\$ \$\$\\\eft| \{1}\\\right\\\rangle \$\$\$, then the third qubit \$\$\\\eft| \{q}\\\\right\\\\\rangle \$\$\$
- \$\$QQ\left| {q}\right\rangle \equiv U\_{\text {NOT}}\left|

{q}\right\rangle \$\$

The conditions (1)–(3) match the rules of the Toffoli gate action.

#### Implementation of the Fredkin gate

```
.../images/505754 1 En 6 Chapter/505754 1 En 6 Figh HTML.png
```

It should be noted that in the proposed implementation of the Fredkin gate, the Toffoli gate is taken as a basis, bordered in the right and left borders of the circuit by CNOT elements. It is proved that such a circuit is optimal in the number of used elementary gates [6].

**Example 6.4** On the Quantum Computing Course exam, a student states that a Toffoli element can be implemented with just three controlled elements as follows:

```
2../images/505754_1_En_6_Chapter/505754_1_En_6_Figi_HTML.png
```

Here is used the designation  $\$  \$\$ R = \begin{bmatrix} \phantom {-}\\cos (\pi /8) &\amp;{} \sin (\pi /8) . \\ -\sin (\pi /8) &\amp;{} \cos (\pi /8) \end{bmatrix} \$\$\$

Is the student right?

#### Solution.

Let us prove it. Suppose that control qubits form the state

- $\$  \$\$\left| {q\_1q\_2}\right\rangle =\left| {10}\right\rangle \$\$, and let us calculate how a controlled qubit
- \$\$ \left|  $\{q_3\}$ \right\rangle =u\left|  $\{0\}$ \right\rangle +v\left| , where  $\{1\}$ \right\rangle \$\$
- \$\$u,v\in \mathbb {C}\$\$, is converted:
- \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {q\_3}\right\rangle \rightarrow \left| {q'\_3}\right\rangle = M\_{R^{\dag}}M\_{R^{\dag}}M\_{\text{NOT}}M\_RM\_R\left| {q\_3}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}\$\$ (6.16)

Remember that the reverse order of matrices for constructing a product of operators is used (see page 11). With regard to

 $$$\left(\frac{R^{\ag} = \left[ bmatrix \right] \cos (\pi/8) ∓{} -\sin (\pi/8) \ \amp;{} \cos (\pi/8) ∓{} -\sin (\pi/8) \ \amp;{} (6.17) \ \amp;{} \end{aligned}$$$ 

we perform matrix calculations:

After simple calculations, we come to the answer:

 $$$ \left( q'_3\right) \left( q'_3\right) = \left( -y \right) \left($ 

but, as it is known, the Toffoli gate does not change the third qubit in the state \$\infty\$ \$\$\left| \{100\\right\\rangle \\$\$. Note that the analyzed circuit provides a way to build a Toffoli gate *accurate to a phase factor* [7].

\$\$\square \$\$

## References

- 1. Rosen KH (ed) (2018) Handbook of discrete and combinatorial mathematics. Discrete mathematics and its applications, 2nd edn. CRC Press, xxiv, 1590 p
- 2. Rosen KH (2019) Discrete mathematics and its applications, 8th edn. McGraw-Hill, New York, NY, xxi, 942 p
- 3. Kurgalin S, Borzunov S (2020) The discrete math workbook: A companion manual using Python, 2nd edn. (Series: Texts in computer science). Springer, Cham, xvii, 500 p
- 4. Toffoli T (1980) Reversible computing. In: de Bakker JW, van Leeuwen J (eds) Proceedings of the 7th colloquium on automata, languages and

programming. Springer, pp 632–644

- 5. Fredkin E, Toffoli T (1982) Conservative logic. Int J Theor Phys 21(3):219-253
- 6. Yu N, Ying M (2015) Optimal simulation of Deutsch gates and the Fredkin gate. Phys Rev A 91: 032302
- 7. Barenco A, Bennett CH, Cleve R, DiVincenzo DP, Margolus N et al (1995) Elementary gates for quantum computation. Phys Rev A 52(5):3457–

# **Footnotes**



7 Edward Fredkin (born 1934).

# 7. Implementation of Boolean Functions

Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1 ⊠</sup> and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1 ⊠</sup>
(1) Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia

**Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)** 

Email: kurgalin@bk.ru

**Sergei Borzunov** 

Email: sborzunov@gmail.com

The main task of classical computations is the computation of functions defined in analytical or tabular form. Let us start with Boolean functions that depend on several arguments .

The implementation of Boolean functions with a quantum computer is based on the construction of a quantum circuit that depends on the kind x \$\$f(\mathbf {x})\$\$.

We represent the given function using only operations of conjunctions and addition modulo two . This representation is called **algebraic normal form** (ANF), or **Reed–Muller expansion**, or **Zhegalkin polynomial** .

The **algebraic normal form** of the function \$ \$\$f(\mathbf {x})\$\$ is the sum modulo two of several elementary conjunctions of the form

\$\$\begin{aligned} G=K\_1\oplus K\_2\oplus \ldots \oplus K\_s, \end{aligned}\$\$ \end{aligned}\$\$

where \$\mathbb{S}\mathbb{S}\mathbb{K}\_i\mathbb{S}\mathbb{S} \mathbb{S}\mathbb{S}=1,2,\dots ,s\mathbb{S}\mathbb{A}\mathbb{A}\mathbb{S}\mathbb{A}\mathbb{S}\mathbb{S}=1,2,\dots ,s\mathbb{S}\mathbb{A}\mathbb{A}\mathbb{A}\mathbb{S}\mathbb{A}

\$\$\{x\_1\$\$, ..., \$\infty\$\$\\$x\_n\}\$\$, where \$\$n=1,2,\dots \$\$ . One of the \$\$K\_i\$\$ can be a constant one. The greatest of ranks of elementary conjunctions included in the polynomial G is called a **degree** of the function. It is known that any Boolean function is uniquely represented

as a Reed–Muller decomposition accurate to the order of summands in the sum and the order of cofactors in the conjunctions [1].

*Note*. More strictly, the decomposition (7.1) is called **positive polarity Reed–Muller expansion**.

There are several methods of constructing an algebraic normal form  $G(\mathbb{X})$ , expressing the given function

- \$\$ $f(x_1,x_2$$ \$, ..., \$\$ $x_n$ \$\$. Next, let us consider two of these methods in detail.
  - 1. Method of undetermined coefficients.

The Zhegalkin polynomial has the following form:

- \$\$\begin{aligned}  $G(x_1,x_2,\dots,x_n)=g_0\wedge 1\circ g_1\wedge K_1\circ g_2\wedge K_2\circ k_1\circ g_1\wedge K_2\circ k_2\$  (7.2) 1}\wedge K\_{2^n-1}, \end{aligned}\$\$
- where \$\infty\$ \$\$K\_i\$\$ are monotone elementary conjunctions, and coefficients \$\infty\$ \$\$\square\$ \$

To determine the unknown coefficients

- $$$g_0, g_1,\dots, g_{2^n-1}$$, we make equations$
- \$\$G(\mathbf {x}\_j)=f(\mathbf {x}\_j)\$\$ for all sorts of tuples
- \$\$\mathbf  $\{x\}_{j}$ \$. We get a system of \$\$2^n\$\$ equations with
- - 2. *Method of equivalent transformations.*

Let us write down an analytic expression for the function

- \$\$f(\mathbf  $\{x\}$ )\$\$ and reduce it with identity transformations using the equality
- \$\$A\vee B=\overline{(\overline{A}\wedge \overline{B}))}\$\$ to an equivalent expression containing only operations from the set
- \$\$\{\overline{\phantom {a}}},\wedge \}\$\$. Next, we exclude negation operations, for which we will replace everywhere expressions of the form
- \$\$\overline{A}\$\$ with \$\$\$A\oplus 1\$\$. Then we expand the brackets using the distribution law
- \$\$A\wedge (B \oplus C) = (A \wedge B) \oplus (A\wedge C)\$\$ and taking into account the equivalencies
- \$ \begin{aligned} A\wedge A = A, \quad A \wedge 1 = A, \\ A\oplus A = 0, \quad A \oplus 0 = A. \end{aligned}\$\$

As a result, we get algebraic normal form for the function  $\$f(\mathbb{x})$ \$.

Note that if the function is given by a vector of values, in some cases it is convenient to switch to its disjunctive normal form, and only then to calculate the Reed–Muller expansion using, for example, the method of equivalent transformation.

**Example 7.1** Let us build an algebraic normal form for the function  $$\$f(x_1,x_2,x_3)\$\$$ , defined by the vector of values  $$\$\lambda = (1010\,0100)\$\$$ .

## Solution.

We use the method of undetermined coefficients. The algebraic normal form for the function  $\$\$f(x_1,x_2,x_3)\$\$$  has the following form:

\$\$\begin{aligned} G(x\_1,x\_2,x\_3)&= g\_0 \oplus g\_1x\_1 \oplus g\_2x\_2 \oplus g\_3x\_3 {}\nonumber \\&\oplus g\_4x\_1x\_2 (7.3) \oplus g\_5x\_1x\_3 \oplus g\_6x\_2x\_3 \oplus g\_7x\_1x\_2x\_3, \end{aligned}\$\$

where  $\$\$g_0,\dots,g_7\in \mathbb{B}$ \$\$.

Using the conditions \$\$f(0,0,0)=1\$\$, \$\$f(0,0,1)=1\$\$,

\$\$f(0,1,0)=1\$\$, etc. we will get a system of equations with respect to unknown coefficients \$\$\$ 9,\\dots,g 7\$\$:

\$\$\begin{aligned} {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} g\_0 = 1,\\ g\_0 \oplus g\_3 = 0,\\ g\_0 \oplus g\_2 = 1,\\ g\_0 \oplus g\_2 \oplus g\_3 \oplus g\_6 = 0,\\ g\_0 \oplus g\_1 = 0,\\ g\_0 \oplus g\_1 \oplus g\_3 \oplus g\_5 = 1,\\ g\_0 \oplus g\_1 \oplus g\_1 \oplus g\_1 \oplus g\_2 \oplu

The solution to this system are Boolean values  $\geqslant$  \$\$g 0=1\$\$,

\$\$g\_1=0\$\$,
\$\$g\_2=0\$\$,
\$\$g\_3=1\$\$, and

\$\$g\_4=g\_5=g\_6=g\_7=0\$\$. Finally, let us write the algebraic normal form for the function \$\$ $f(x_1,x_2,x_3)$ \$:

\$\$\begin{aligned}  $f(x_1,x_2,x_3) = 1 \cdot x_1 \cdot x_3 \cdot x_3 \cdot x_1 \cdot x_2 \cdot x_3 \cdot x$ 

On the basis of the algebraic normal form, construct a quantum circuit implementing an arbitrary Boolean function

```
$$f(x_1,x_2,dots,x_n)$$ [2, 3]. For this purpose, we use an n-qubit register reflecting the input data and a separate qubit
```

\$\$\left| {q}\right\rangle \$\$ for the output of the response. The state of the quantum system is described by the product

\$ \$\$\left| {x\_0,x\_1,\dots ,x\_n}\right\rangle \left| {q}\right\rangle \$\$.

Qubit \$\sqrt{q}\right\rangle \$\\$ takes the initial value \$\\$\left| \{0}\right\rangle \$\\$.

The method of constructing the quantum circuit is as follows [4].

For each of the Reed–Muller expansion summands (7.1), add a NOT gate controlled by qubits with variables from these summands.

- The constant  $\geqslant$  \$\$f=1\$\$ is represented by a standard NOT gate.
- Variables of the type 
  \$\s\$x\_i\$\$, 
  \$\s\$ \$\$1\leqslant i\leqslant n\$\$, are represented by the inversion NOT controlled by the qubit
  \$\$\left| {x\_i}\right\rangle \$\$.
- Paired conjunctions of the form \$\overline{x}\$ \$\\$x\_ix\_j\$\$\$,
  - \$\$1\leqslant i,j\leqslant n\$\$, are represented by the inversion controlled by two qubits \$\$\left| {x\_i}\right\rangle \$\$ and
  - $\geqslant$  \$\$\left| {x\_j}\right\rangle \$\$.
- Triple conjunctions of the form \$\omega\$ \$\sx\_ix\_jx\_k\$\$,
  - \$\$1\leqslant i,j,k\leqslant n\$\$, are represented by the inversion controlled by three qubits \$\$\left| {x\_i}\right\rangle \$\$,
  - $\geqslant$  \$\$\left| {x\_j}\right\rangle \$\$, and
  - \$\\left| {x\_k}\\right\\rangle \$\$.

As it is easy to see, using the NOT, CNOT, CCNOT, ...,CC...CNOT operations, it is possible to implement an arbitrary Boolean function. The order of applying elementary operations does not matter, because they commutate with each other. This property is derived from the commutability of the addition modulo two operation in Boolean algebra:

\$\$\begin{aligned} \forall x\_1,x\_2\in \mathbb {B}\; (x\_1\oplus x\_2 = (7.6) x\_2\oplus x\_1). \end{aligned}\$\$

**Example 7.2** The Boolean function of three variables is defined as  $\$f(x_1,x_2,x_3)=x_1 \le x_1 \le x_1 \le x_1 \le x_1 \le x_2 \le x_2 \le x_3 \le x_3$ 

. Build a quantum circuit that implements this function.

Solution.

First of all, we calculate the algebraic normal form of the function  $\$f(x_1,x_2,x_3)$ :

\$\$\begin{aligned} G\_f(x\_1,x\_2,x\_3) = x\_1\oplus x\_2\oplus x\_1x\_2\oplus x\_2x\_3\oplus x\_1x\_2x\_3. \end{aligned}\$\$ Thus, to implement \$\$f(x\_1,x\_2,x\_3)\$\$, two CNOT elements, one CCNOT element, and one CCCNOT element are required. Their order in the circuit is arbitrary; for certainty, we choose the order defined by the formula 
$$(7.7)$$
.

If necessary, an arbitrary circuit containing controlled inversions can be brought to a form containing only two-qubit elements (see page 33).

As in the case of classical computations, it is possible to implement more complex types of functional dependencies using Boolean functions. Let us show how to calculate the function of an integer non-negative argument.

$$$$ \left\{Z\right_0 \right\} (7.8) $$ \left\{Z\right_0 : \left\{Z\right_0, (7.8) \right\} $$ where $$ $$ $$ $Z_0 = {0,1,2,\dots }$.$$

**Table 7.1** The table of values of f(x)

x	\$\$(x)_{\text {bin}}\$\$	f(x)	\$\$[f(x)]_{\text {bin}}\$\$
0	0 0	1	0 0 1
1	0 1	2	0 1 0
2	1 0	3	0 1 1
3	11	4	100
qubits	\$\$x_1x_2\$\$		\$\$q_1q_2q_3\$\$

To solve this problem, we code the argument in an *n*-qubit register, and the result will be read from another, *m*-qubit register.

../images/505754\_1\_En\_7\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_7\_Figb\_HTML.png

In this way it is possible to input the numbers

- \$ \$\$0,1,2,\dots ,2\n-1\$\$, and to obtain the result from the set
- \$\$[0,  $2^m-1$ ]\$\$. If it is necessary to extend either the domain or the range of the function values, the *n* or *m* parameter should be increased, respectively.

**Example 7.3** Let us construct a quantum circuit implementing the function \$\$f(x)=x+1\$\$. Consider that the domain of the function is the set  $\$\$\{0,1,2,3\}$ \$\$.

## Solution.

We make a table of values of the function f(x), where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where we specify the binary representation of the argument [x], where [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the binary representation of the argument [x] is a specify the argument

From Table 7.1, we can see that two qubits \$ \left|  $\{x_1\}$  \right\rangle \$\$ and \$ \left|  $\{x_2\}$  \right\rangle \$\$ are sufficient to encode the argument, and three qubits \$ \left|  $\{q_1\}$  \right\rangle \$\$, \$ \left|  $\{q_2\}$  \right\rangle \$\$, and \$ \left|  $\{q_3\}$  \right\rangle \$\$ are sufficient to encode the response.

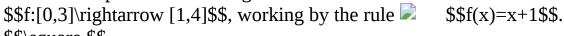
*Fig.* 7.2 Implementation of the full set of two-argument functions (functions ☐\$\$f\_8\$\$− ☐\$\$f\_{15}\$\$)

Thus, the high bit of the response \$ \$\$[f(x)]\_{\text {bin}}\$\$ in the binary form has a vector value \$ \$\$\varvec{\alpha} =(0001)\$\$, the second bit has a vector value \$ \$\$\varvec{\beta} =(0110)\$\$, and the third bit has a vector value \$ \$\$\varvec{\gamma} =(1010)\$\$. Therefore,

the high bit implements the Boolean function  $\$$x_1\$  \$\$x\_1\wedge x\_2\$\$, the second bit corresponds to the Boolean function  $\$$x_1\$  \$\$x\_1\oplus x\_2\$\$, finally, the third bit corresponds to the Boolean function  $\$$1\$  \$\$1\oplus x\_2\$\$ (see Figs. 7.1 and 7.2). So we get the following circuit:

../images/505754\_1\_En\_7\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_7\_Figc\_HTML.png

This circuit implements the integral function



\$\$\square \$\$

# References

- 1. Koshy T (2004) Discrete mathematics with applications. Elsevier Academic Press, xxiv, 1045 p
- 2. Ngoc VP, Wiklicky H (2020) Tunable quantum neural networks for Boolean functions. ArXiv: 2003.14122v1 [quant-ph]
- 3. Younes A, Miller J (2018) Automated method for building CNOT based quantum circuits for Boolean functions. ArXiv:quant-ph/0304099
- 4. Younes A, Miller J (2004) Representation of Boolean quantum circuits as Reed–Muller expansions. Int J Electron 91(7):431–444

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2021

S. Kurgalin, S. BorzunovConcise Guide to Quantum ComputingTexts in Computer Science<a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0">https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0</a> 8

# 8. Quantum Fourier Transform

Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1</sup> - and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1</sup> - (1) Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia

Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)

Email: kurgalin@bk.ru

Sergei Borzunov

Email: <a href="mailto:sborzunov@gmail.com">sborzunov@gmail.com</a>

Let us recall the main definitions associated with the classical Fourier $^{1}$  transform known from the course of mathematical analysis.

The Fourier transform is one of the central methods of modern applied mathematics [1, 2].

Consider a function \$\$s:\mathbb {R}\rightarrow \mathbb {C}\$\$. Let s(t) be absolutely integrable on its domain of definition, that is \$\$\\int \limits \_{-\infty }^\\infty |s(t)| dt<\\infty \$\$.

The **Continuous Fourier Transform** of the function s(t) is determined by the relation

 $$$\left( S(f)=\left( -\left( s(t)e^{2\pi i} f t \right) \right) \le 1.00$ 

Function S(f) is called an **image** of the original function s(t).

*Note.* Traditionally, s(t) in physical applications is considered as a **signal**, and S(f) is considered as a **signal spectrum**. Furthermore, the variable t has the meaning of time and f has the meaning of linear frequency. Note that the designation  $$\mathbb{Z}$S(f)=\mathbb{F}[s(t)]$$  is widely used.

In computational problems, the considered function is usually defined not analytically, but in the form of discrete values on some grid, usually uniform.

```
In practical problems, the sample length
\$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf {x}=(\dots, x_{-2}, x_{-1}, x_0, x_1, x_2,
\dots ) \end{aligned}$$
(8.2)
is usually bounded, so let us consider the transition from a continuous
integral transform \$ \mathcal \{F\}[s(t)] to an approximate integral
sum:
$$\begin{aligned} \left( \mathcal {F}[s(t)]\right) _n\!=\!\int _{-\infty}
\ \ \\infty s(t)e^{2\pi i f_n t}dt \rightarrow \sum _{k=-\infty }^\\infty x_k
e^{2\pi i f} n t k} delta := k=0}^{N-1} x k e^{2\pi i k}
n/N. \end{aligned}$$
(8.3)
Thus, we come to the definition of the Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT)
of N values \$$x_k$$, where \$$k=0,1,\dots, N-1$$:
\$$\begin{aligned} v n=\sum {k=0}^{N-1} x k e^{2\pi i k n/N},
0\leqslant n\leqslant N-1, \end{aligned}$$
(8.4)
or, using the designation for the root of unity \$$\omega = e^{2\pi i/N}$$
0\legslant n\legslant N-1. \end{aligned}$$
(8.5)
Note that the values $\sim$$\omega $$ and their integer non-negative degrees
$\omega k \equiv \omega \k=e\{2\pi i k/N}$$ have a number of
```

The **Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform** is determined by the formula

interesting properties, some of which have been investigated in

Exercises <u>74</u>–<u>76</u>.

```
 \begin{aligned}  x_n = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega^{-kn} y_k, 0\leq x_n = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega^{-kn} y_k = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=0}^{N-1}
```

(8.7) Let us change the summation order:

 $_{i=0}^{N-1}\omega ^{ik} x_i. \end{aligned}$ 

 $\begin{aligned} $$ \left[ \frac{F}^{-1}[\mathbf{F}_{\mathbf{x}}] \right]_n = \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} x_i \left( \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \operatorname{deg} ^{k(i-n)} \right). \end{aligned} $$ (8.8)$ 

Further, use the properties of the values \$\$\omega =e^{2\pi i/N}\$\$, considered in Exercise  $\frac{75}{5}$  (see also  $\frac{3}{5}$ ):

 $$$ \left\{ \frac{1}{N} \right \left( \frac{1}{N} \right) \left( \frac{1}{N} \right) \left( \frac{1}{N} \right) - \left( \frac{1}{N} \right) \left( \frac{1}{N} \right) - \left$ 

Finally, we obtain

- \$\$(\mathcal {F}^{-1}[\mathcal {F}[\mathbf {x}]])\_n=x\_n\$\$
- \$\$\forall n=0,1,\dots ,N-1\$\$. The equality
- $$\$  \mathcal {F}[\mathcal {F}^{-1}[\mathbf {x}]]=\mathbf {x}\$\$ is proved in the same way.

According to the definition, the computation of the vector

- \$\$\mathbf {y}\$\$ for the given \$\$\mathbf {x}\$\$ requires
- \$\$ $O(N^2)$ \$\$ complex multiplications. There is a way to significantly

reduce the asymptotic complexity of the DFT. The **Fast Fourier Transform** algorithm, or **FFT**, requires only  $\$$O(N\log_2 N)$$  multiplication operations; there are also ways to parallelize the FFT [6]. In further consideration, we will assume that  $\$$N=2^m$$  for some natural number m. This limitation is not fundamental, because one of the following approaches can be used if you need to implement the Fast Fourier Transform algorithm for  $\$$N\neq 2^m$$ :

- (1) fill in several cells of the array representing a signal with zeros, so that *N* becomes equal to the nearest power of two;
- (2) use more complex generalizations of the FFT (see, for example, [7]).

```
To distribute FFT operations among computational nodes, the following approach [8] is used: the vector \$\mathbf \{x\}=(x_0,\dots,x_{N-1})\$, representing input signal counts, is considered as a two-dimensional array of size \$\$N_1\times N_2\$, where \$\$N_1=2\{m_1\}\$,
```

- \$\$N\_2=2^{m\_2}\$\$ for some \$\$\$m\_1,m\_2\in \mathbb {N}\$\$, such that \$\$\$2^{m\_1+m\_2}=N\$\$. Then the index i of an arbitrary element of vector
- \$\$\mathbf  $\{x\}$ \$\$ can be written in the form
- \$ \begin{aligned} i=L N\_1+l, \text {where} 0\leqslant l\leqslant N\_1-1, 0\leqslant L\leqslant N\_2-1. \end{aligned}\$\$

Components of Fourier transform

- $\$ \$\$\mathbf {y}=\mathcal {F}[\mathbf {x}]\$\$ are calculated according to the formula
- \$\$\begin{aligned} y\_n=\sum \_{k=0}^{N\_1 N\_2 1} e^{\frac{2\pi i k n} {N\_1\! N\_2}}x\_k \end{aligned}\$\$ (8.10)

for all \$\infty\$\$0\leqslant n\leqslant N\_1N\_2-1\$\$, or

 $$$ \left\{ 1 N_2+\widetilde{L} \right\} = \sum_{L=0}^{N_2 - 1}\sum_{l=0}^{N_1 - 1} e^{\frac{2\pi i}{N_1! N_2} \left( \frac{l}{N_2 + \widetilde{L}} \right)} \\ (\widetilde{l}N_2+\widetilde{L})(L N_1+l)x_{L N_1+l}. \\ \left\{ 1 \right\} \\ (\widetilde{l}N_2+\widetilde{L})(L N_1+l)x_{L N_1+l}. \\ (\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l}) \\ (\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l}) \\ (\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l}) \\ (\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l}) \\ (\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l})(\widetilde{l}) \\ (\widetilde{l})(\wid$ 

(8.11)

After algebraic transformations, let us write the components of the vector \$ mathbf  $\{y\}$  in the following form:

```
$$\ \begin{aligned} y_{{,\widetilde{1}N_2+\widetilde{L}}=\
_{l=0}^{N_1 - 1} e^{\frac{2\pi i}{\sqrt{2l}} i}, Widetilde_{l}\, l}{N_1} 
(e^{\frac{2\pi i}{N_1!} N_2}) \Big| (sum_{L=0}^{N_2 - i}, l\cdot i), l\cdot i]
1e^{\frac{2\pi i L\widetilde{L}}{N_2}}x_{L N_1+l}\Big )\bigg ).
\end{aligned}$$
(8.12)
The implementation of a parallel program based on the obtained expression
for $\sqrt{y}$$ is easy. Using a possible parallelism over the
variable l, there is calculated the inner sum
$$\begin{aligned} \sum \limits _{L=0}^{N_2 - 1}e^{\frac{2\pi i
L \in \{L\} \{N_2\} x_{L N_1+l} \in \{L N_1+l\} \in 
(8.13)
for \$$l=0,\dots, N_1-1$. The values are then multiplied by
\$$e^{\frac{2\pi i\,l\widetilde{L}}{N_1\! N_2}}$$; then another FFT
with the possibility of parallelism over the variable L is applied, where
$$L=0,\dots,N_2-1$$. The values
$$$y_{\,\widetilde{1}N_2+\widetilde{L}}$$ form the final answer
\$$\mathbf {y}=\mathcal {F}[\mathbf {x}]$$.
```

The **Quantum Fourier Transform** is a component of many quantum algorithms, including the quantum algorithm of the decomposition of a compound number into prime multipliers, the algorithm of phase evaluation for finding unitary operator eigenvalues, etc.

```
Let us consider the orthonormalized computational basis \$\ begin{aligned} B=\\left( 0\right) \, \left| {0}\right\rangle, \left| {1}\right\rangle, \dots, \left| {N-1}\right\rangle \}, \end{aligned}$$ (8.14) where N is the number of states that form the basis. The Quantum Discrete Fourier Transform of computational basis elements is
```

The action of the operator \$\sim\$\$\mathcal {F}\$\$ on an arbitrary quantum state, represented as a superposition of basis states

```
$$\left| {j}\right\rangle $$, is equal to
$$\begin{aligned} \sum _{j=0}^{N-1}c_j\left| {j}\right\rangle
\left| \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\right| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{i,k=0}^{N-1}c \ i e^{2\pi i \ i \ k/N}\left| e^{1}\right|
{k}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}$$
(8.16)
This formula reflects the quantum-mechanical principle of the
superposition of states.
Matrix $\sim$$F_N$$ of the operator $\sim$$\mathcal {F}$$ has the size of
$$N\times N$$, and it is equal to
\mathbb{S}$\begin{aligned} F N = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;
{} 1 & amp; {} \dots & amp; {} \dots & amp; {} \dots & amp; {} \omega _n & amp;
\{\} \omega_n^2 & p; \{\} \otimes p; \{\} \omega_n^{N-1} \setminus 1 \otimes p; \{\} \omega_n^{N-1} \in \mathbb{N} \}
\omega_n^2 = n^2 \
_n^{2(N-1)} \ 1 \ amp;{} \ omega _n^3 \ amp;{} \ omega _n^6 \ amp;{}
\displaystyle \operatorname{amp}_{1} \simeq n^{3(N-1)} \wedge \operatorname{for}_{5} \wedge 1 \otimes \operatorname{amp}_{1} 
_n^{N-1} \ \text{amp}; {} \ \text{omega} \ _n^{2(N-1)} \ \text{amp}; {} \ \text{omega}
_n^{(N-1)(N-1)} \end{bmatrix} . \end{aligned}
(8.17)
The elements of this matrix are defined by the formula
\$$\begin{aligned} (F_N)_{k_1,k_2} = e^{2\pi i(k_1-1)(k_2-1)/N}
\end{aligned}$$
(8.18)
for all \$$k_1,k_2 = 0,1,\dots,N-1$$.
Suppose that the size of the computational basis is equal to a positive
```

Suppose that the size of the computational basis is equal to a positive integer degree of two:  $\$N = 2^n\$  for some  $\$n\in \mathbb{N}\$ . For a further explanation, we will need a binary representation of j.

```
We introduce a notation $\sim$$j=j_1j_2\dots j_n$$ for the binary representation of the natural number j: $\shegin{aligned} j = 2^{n-1}j_1 + 2^{n-2}j_2 + \dots + 2^0j_n. \end{aligned}$$ (8.19) Similarly, for real $\sim$$$0<j&lt;1$$ we write the binary representation as $\sim$$$\begin{aligned} j = (0{.}j_lj_{l+1}\\dots j_m) = 2^{-1}j_l + 2^{-2}j_{l+1} + \dots + 2^{l-m-1}j_m. \end{aligned}$$$$
```

```
(8.20)
In particular, \$$(0{.}j_1)=j_1/2$, \$$(0{.}j_1j_2)=j_1/2+j_2/4$, etc.
Taking into account the introduced notations, the Quantum Fourier
Transform can be represented as follows:
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {j_1j_2\dots j_n}\right\rangle&\rightarrow
\mathcal{F}[\left\{ j_1 \right\} \right\} \
{ = \frac{1}{2^{n/2}} \left| \left( \left| \{0\}\right| \right| + e^{2\pi i} \right) } 
e^{2\pi i(0\{.\}_{n-1}_{j_n})}\left\{1\right\}\right\}
\ensuremath{\$amp;{}\times \left( \left| \{0\}\right| \{0\}\right| + e^{2\pi i(0\{.\})} 1 = 2\cdot dots
i n)}\left| {1}\right\rangle \right) . \end{aligned}$$
(8.21)
In fact, the following sequence of equations is executed:
$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {F}_N[\left| {j}\right\rangle ] =
{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{2\pi i j k 2^{-n}}\left[
_{k_1\in \{0,1\}}\sum_{k_2\in \{0,1\}}\\!\dots \!\sum _{k_n\in \{0,1\}}\!
e^{2\pi i j \cdot left( \sum_{l=1}^n k_l 2^{-l} \cdot j \cdot left| \{k_1k_2 \cdot dots\}
k nrightrangle \{ \} \setminus \{ \} 
_{k_1\in \{0,1\}}\sum_{k_2\in \{0,1\}}\dots \sum_{k_n\in \{0,1\}} \prod_{k_n\in \{0,1\}} \
_{l=1}^n e^{2\pi i j k_l 2^{-l}}\left| {k_l}\right\rangle {}\nonumber \\{}=
{\sqrt{N}}\prod_{l=1}^n\sum_{k_l\in \{0,1\}} e^{2\pi i}
i_{2^{-1}}\left( k_l\right) \
{\clustering} \ _{l=1}^n\left( \left| \{0\}\right| + e^{2\pi i j 2^{-1}} \right)
1} \left| {1}\right\rangle \right) {}\nonumber \\{}={}&\frac{1}
{\left(\frac{2}\right)\left(\frac{0}{right} + e^{2\pi i (0_{.}_{j_n})\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}
{1}\right\rangle \right) \!\times \! \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left( \left|
\{0\}\right\ i \{0\}\right\ i \{0\}\right\ i \{0\}\right\ i \{1\}\right\ right rangle \right
\!\dots \nonumber \\{}\times {}&\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left( \left|
\label{lem:condition} $$\{0\}\rightarrow +e^{2\pi i (0\{.\}j_1j_2\cdot j_n)}\left( -1\}j_n \right).$$
{1}\right\rangle \right) . \end{aligned}$$
(8.22)
Thus, the formula (8.21) is proven. Note that
$\mathcal {F} N[\left| {k}\right\rangle ]$$ is presented in a
factorialized form, and the corresponding state is not confusing [9].
```

```
From the representation (8.21), if follows directly that the first output qubit
is in the superposition $\square$$\left| \{0\}\right\rangle $\square$ and
\$$e^{2\pi i(0{.}j_1\dots j_n)}\left| {1}\right\rangle $$, the second qubit
is in the superposition $\$\left| \{0\\right\rangle \$\$ and
\$$e^{2\pi i(0{.}j_2\dots j_n)}\left| {1}\right\rangle $$, etc., and the final
qubit in the superposition $\$\left| \{0}\right\rangle $\$ and
$$e^{2\pi i(0{.}j_n)}\left| {1}\right\rangle $$.
Let us turn to a number of special cases of small values n of the
computational basis. Next, using the gate $\sime$$R p$$, we will denote a
unitary transformation of the form
\$$\begin{aligned} R_p = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{}
e^{2\pi i/2^p} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}
(8.23)
for \$$p=2,3,\dots,n\$.
1. One qubit: $\square$$n=1$$.
$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {F}[\left| {j_1}\right\rangle ] = \frac{1}
\{1\} \rightarrow \left\{1\} \right\} \left( \left\{0\} \right\} + \left\{1\} \right\}
e^{\pi i i} 1 \left| \{1\} \right\rangle \right). \end{aligned}$$
(8.24)
Since
$$\begin{aligned} e^{\pi i j_1}= {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \phantom
\{-\}1,\text{text } \{if \}_{j=1}=0,\dots-1,\text{text } \{if \}_{j=1}=1, \text{d}\{array}\}
\end{aligned}$$
(8.25)
the resulting transformation matches the Hadamard transform (3.7):
     .../images/505754_1_En_8_Chapter/505754_1_En_8_Figa_HTML.p
     ng
2. Two qubits: 🔍$$n=2$$.
$$\begin{aligned}&\left| {j_1j_2}\right\rangle \rightarrow \mathcal
{F}[\left| \{j_1j_2\}\right| ] {\nonumber \ \ }&{} = \frac{1}{2}
\left( \left| \{0\}\right| + e^{2\pi i(0\{.\}_{j_2})} \right| \{1\}\right)
\right) \times \left( \left| \{0\}\right\rangle + e^\{2\pi i(0\{.\}j_1j_2)\}\left|
{1}\right\rangle \right) . \end{aligned}$$
```

(8.26)

The transformation is implemented by the following quantum circuit:

../images/505754\_1\_En\_8\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_8\_Figb\_HTML.p

3. *Three qubits*: ▶\$\$n=3\$\$.

 $\label{theory:left: constraints} $$\left[\left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\right] \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\right] {\nonumber \&{}={} \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\right] \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\right] {\nonumber \&{}={} \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\} \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\right] \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\right] \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\right] \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\} \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right] \left\{ j_1j_2j_3\right\} \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_2j_3\right\} \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_2j_2j_2\right\} \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_2j_2\right\} \left[ \left\{ j_2j_2j_2\right\} \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_2j_2\right\} \left[ \left\{ j_1j_2j_$ 

Quantum circuit:

../images/505754\_1\_En\_8\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_8\_Figc\_HTML.p

For a system formed by *n* qubits, we get the following circuit. Several SWAP exchanges on the final steps of the algorithm restore the required state order.

Let us note the important difference in the results of Classical and Quantum Fourier Transforms. The Fourier Transform (8.4), executed over a vector of values of the function  $\$\$(x_1,x_2)$ , leads to a new vector \$\$ mathbf  $\{y\}=(y_1,y_2,\dots,y_n)\$\$$ . All components of this vector are known. In the case of the Quantum Fourier Transform applied to the state of a set of qubits, a new state—a superposition of basis states—will be obtained. Information on Fourier coefficients is contained in the amplitudes of basis states. A single measurement made at

\$\$\left| {\psi \_{\text {out}}}\right\rangle = \mathcal {F}[\left| {\psi \_{\text {in}}}\right\rangle ]\$\$

will not produce the full spectrum. Moreover, the fact of making a measurement will project \$\s\left| {\psi \_{\text {out}}}\right\rangle \$\s\into one of the basis states. Quantum algorithms that use the Fourier

Transform must take into account these limitations when working with the results of this transform (Fig. <u>8.1</u>).

../images/505754\_1\_En\_8\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_8\_Fig1\_HTML.p ng Fig. 8.1

Quantum Fourier Transform Circuit

The Quantum Fourier Transform is implemented using a circuit containing only  $$\$$O(n^2)$$ \$ elementary logic gates. This is much smaller than the transform (8.4), which requires  $$\$$O(N\log N)=O(n\times 2^n)$$ \$ of elementary operations.

# References

- 1. 1.
  - Grafakos L (2008) Classical fourier analysis, 2nd edn. (Series: Graduate texts in mathematics, vol 249). Springer, xvi, 489 p
- 2. 2. Vretblad A (2003) Fourier analysis and its applications (Series: Graduate texts in mathematics, vol 223). Springer, xii, 269 p
- 3. 3.
  - Kurgalin S, Borzunov S (2020) The discrete math workbook: A companion manual using Python, 2nd edn. (Series: Texts in computer science). Springer, Cham, xvii, 500 p
- 4. 4.
  - Cormen TH, Leiserson CE, Rivest RL, Stein C (2009) Introduction to algorithms, 3rd edn. The MIT Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, London, xx, 1292 p
- 5. 5. McConnell JJ (2001) Analysis of algorithms: an active learning approach. Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Sudbury, Massachusetts
- 6. 6. Kurgalin S, Borzunov S (2019) A practical approach to high-performance computing. Springer International Publishing, Cham, xi, 206 p
- 7. 7.

Van Loan C (1992) Computational frameworks for the fast Fourier transform (Series: Frontiers in applied mathematics). Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, Philadelphia, 273 p

8.8.

Press WH et al (2007) Numerical recipes: the art of scientific computing, 3rd edn. Cambridge University Press, xxii, 1235 p

9.9.

Billig Y (2018) Quantum computing for high school students, 134 p

# **Footnotes**

1

Jean-Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1786–1830).

<u>2</u>

An asymptotic notation O(g(n)) is used here. O(g(n)) is a **class of functions growing no faster than** g(n) [4, 5]. It is defined as

It is said that the function f(n) belongs to the class O(g(n)) (read as "big-O of g"), if for all values of the argument n, starting from the threshold value \$\$ $n=n_0$ \$, the inequalities \$\$f(n)leqslant cg(n)\$ are valid for some positive c. Also, a **class of functions growing at the same rate as** g(n) is used, and it is denoted by \$\$n\$.

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2021

S. Kurgalin, S. BorzunovConcise Guide to Quantum ComputingTexts in Computer Science<a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0">https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0</a> 9

# 9. Phase Evaluation Algorithm

Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1</sup> - and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1</sup> - (1)

Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia

Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)

Email: <u>kurgalin@bk.ru</u>

Sergei Borzunov

Email: <a href="mailto:sborzunov@gmail.com">sborzunov@gmail.com</a>

In a number of quantum-mechanical problems, you need to define eigenvalues of some unitary operator U:

\$\$\begin{aligned} U\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \lambda \left| {\psi }\right\rangle , \end{aligned}\$\$
(9.1)

where \$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ is a known eigenvector of operator U, \$\$\lambda \$\$ is an eigenvalue, which needs to be defined. Due to the unitarity of U, the equality \$\$\lambda | = 1\$\$ is fulfilled, and therefore the eigenvalue can be represented as \$\$\lambda = e^{2\pi i \cdot \pi}\$\$, where \$\$\varphi \$\$ is a real number (as it is said, the **transformation phase**) satisfies the condition \$\$0\leqs\lambda \text{leqs}\$\$.

Let the bit representation of the value \$\sqrt{s}\varphi \$\$ is finite:

\$\$\begin{aligned} \varphi = 0{.}\varphi \_1\varphi \_2\dots \varphi \_n. \end{aligned}\$\$

(9.2)

In the phase estimation algorithm, there will be used 2 quantum registers, the first of which contains n qubit, originally pre-set in

\$\$\$\left| {0}\right\rangle \$\$. The second register is originally in the state

- \$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$, the number of qubits in this register depends on the specific type of the operator U. The algorithm consists of the following steps .
- 1. For \$\\$\\$\=2^n\\$\\$, we compute the Direct Fourier Transform, applied to \$\\$\left| {\underbrace{00\\dots 0}\_{n\text { qubits}}}\right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\\$
- . The result is equal to
- $$$\sum _{q=0}^{N-1}\left( q\right) \$
- 2. Apply *U* to the second register *q* times:
- \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {q}\right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = e^{2\pi i\varphi q}\left| {q}\right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle . \end{aligned}\$\$ (9.3)

The first *n* qubits form the state

- $$$ \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \right] _{q=0}^{N-1}e^{2\pi i \operatorname{q}\left(q\right)} = \mathcal{F}[\left\{ \frac{2^n\operatorname{q}}{\alpha}\right\} ]. \end{aligned} $$ (9.4)$
- 3. Calculate the inverse Fourier Transform \$\$\mathcal {F}^{-1}\$\$, applied to the first n qubits and perform the measurement procedure. We obtain
- \$\$\left| {2^n\varphi }\right\rangle =\left| {\varphi \_1\varphi \_2\dots \varphi \_n}\right\rangle \$\$ with a probability, equal to one.

It remains to consider the case when the bit representation of the value \$\\$\varphi \$\\$ is not finite:

\$\$\varphi = 0{.}\varphi \_1\varphi \_2\dots \varphi \_n\dots \$\$. Applying a phase evaluation algorithm leads to an approximate value of \$\$\varphi \$\$

The phase estimation algorithm has widespread application in quantum computing, being a part of the algorithm of factorization of composite numbers and algorithm of solving systems of linear algebraic equations [1].

As can be seen from the examples of the reviewed quantum algorithms, quantum-mechanical computations have significant differences compared to the classical methods of computation organization. Thus, the result of quantum computing can be obtained only after measuring the system state, which is a non-deterministic (probabilistic) process. Due to this non-determined character is inherent to almost all quantum algorithms.

# Reference

# 1. 1.

Harrow AW, Hassidim A, Lloyd S (2009) Quantum algorithm for linear systems of equations. Phys Rev Lett 103:150502

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2021 S. Kurgalin, S. BorzunovConcise Guide to Quantum ComputingTexts in Computer Science<a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0">https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-65052-0</a> 10

# 10. Quantum Search

Sergei Kurgalin<sup>1</sup> - and Sergei Borzunov<sup>1</sup> - (1)
Digital Technologies, Voronezh State University, Voronezh, Russia

Sergei Kurgalin (Corresponding author)

Email: kurgalin@bk.ru

Sergei Borzunov

Email: <a href="mailto:sborzunov@gmail.com">sborzunov@gmail.com</a>

The search for information in some data structure is an important task in the field of computer sciences. Traditionally, it is considered a simple data structure—an array with integer elements. Generalization of search algorithms into more complex structures, as a rule, does not cause any difficulties [1, 2].

Let us briefly remind you how the search problem is solved by classical methods.

Let there be a problem of determining the index of the array element equal in value to this particular value, which is called **target**. **Sequential search algorithm** is applied to work with an unordered array and operates in the following way: sequentially looks through the array elements starting from the first one and compares them with the target one. If the sought element is found, the index of this element is returned, otherwise the result must be a number that does not correspond to any element, for example, \$\$-1\$\$.

Analysis of the sequential search algorithm shows that when the target element is located at the end of an array, the number of required element operations is N, where N is the array size. For the complexity of this algorithm in the average case, we get the expression

 $$$\left(N\right)=\left(N+1\right)_{2}=\$  (10.1)

which uses the asymptotic notation \$\$\Theta (g(N))\$\$ is the *class of functions growing at the same rate as g*(*N*) (see note on page 47). Thus, the search in an unordered array has an asymptotic complexity linear in the size of input data.

Consider the quantum analogue of the search algorithm. We formulate a quantum search problem in the following form.

There is specified an unordered set of non-negative integers \$\$\begin{aligned} \{0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1\}, \end{aligned}\$\$ exactly one of which is the sought number, let us denote such sought number by \$\$q\_0\$\$. To check if any value is appropriate, there is used the following function:

```
$$\begin{aligned} F:\{0,1,2,\dots ,N-1\}\rightarrow \mathbb {B},
\end{aligned}$$
(10.2)
which operates in accordance with the rule:
$$\ {ll} 1, \text { if }q = q_0,\
0, \text { if }q\ne q 0. \end{array}\right. } \end{aligned}$$
(10.3)
In other words, at the target value, the function F is equal to one, at all other values from the
definition area it is equal to zero. The problem is to define $\sim$$$q_0$$ provided that the calculation
of F(q) in an arbitrary point is taken as one calculation step.
Let us turn to the quantum representation of the considered problem. To the numbers from the set
$$\{0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1\}$$ we assign to the quantum states $$$\left| {0}\right\rangle $$,
$\left| {1}\right\rangle $$, ..., $\$\left| {N-1}\right\rangle $$. Checking to see if some state is
sought is done with the specified quantum circuit \(\sigma_s\)\(\sigma_s\)\(\text{mathcal }{O}$$. This circuit is called
oracle. It operates in accordance with the following rule:
$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {O}\left| {q}\right\rangle = {\left\{
{-}\left| {q}\right\rangle , \text { if }q\ne q_0. \end{array}\right. }
\end{aligned}$$
(10.4)
Note that with the help of the quantum oracle it is possible to change the phase of the sought state
without affecting all other states of the set.
However, phase change alone will not allow us to make a conclusion about $\sim$$q_0$$ at the
```

macroscopic level. For this purpose, it is necessary to change the observed probabilities inherent in a quantum system, which is what is performed in the **Grover's** algorithm, or quantum search algorithm.

Grover's algorithm consists of the following steps [3, 4]:

```
1. 1.
```

```
Applying Hadamard transform to register
$$\left| {\underbrace{00\dots 0} {n\text { qubits}}}\right\rangle $$ of basis states
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {00\dots 0}\right\rangle \rightarrow \dfrac{1}
{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{q=0}^{N-1}\left\{q\right\} \
We denote the obtained state through $\left| {\Psi _0}\right\rangle $\script$.
```

2. 2.

```
Application of a unitary operator \$ \mathcal \{U\} = HSH\mathcal \{O\}\$ to the current
 state, where H is the Hadamard operator,
   $$$S = 2\left| {0}\right\rangle \left\langle {0}\right| -I$$ is the so-called projection
 operator. This operator acts in accordance with the rule:
 $$\begin{aligned} S\left| {q}\right\rangle = {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll}}
\phantom \{-\} \setminus \{q\} \setminus \{
 \text { if }q\ne 0, \end{array}\right. } \end{aligned}$$
 reversing the phase sign for all states except zero.
```

```
3. 3. Step 2 is repeated $$m=\left\lfloor \dfrac{\pi}{4}\sqrt{N}\right\rfloor $$ times. Here is used the following designation: $$\lfloor x\rfloor $$ is an integer part of the real number x, i.e., the largest integer, smaller, or equal to x: $$\begin{aligned} \lfloor x\rfloor :\mathbb {R}\rightarrow \mathbb {Z},\quad \lfloor x\rfloor =\max (n\in \mathbb {Z},\; n\leqslant x). \end{aligned}$$$ (10.7)
```

#### 4. 4.

The register is measured in a computational basis.

Note that the properties of the matrix of the operator *S* are given in Exercise <u>17</u>.

Let us prove the correctness of Grover's algorithm.

```
In step 1, the register is prepared in the state
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\Psi 0}\right\rangle = {}&{} \dfrac{1}
{\clustered {N}}\left( \left| {0}\right| + \left| {1}\right| {1}\right| + \clustered {1}\right) 
\{q_0\}\right) + \dots + \|\{N-1\}\right) + \|\{n_0\}\right) 
{\sqrt{N}}\left( {q_0}\right) + \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}}\left( {q_0}\right) 
{\sqrt{N}}\sum {q\neq 0}\left[q\right].
(10.8)
We denote the coefficients in the obtained linear combination using the auxiliary real-valued
$$\begin{aligned} \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{N}}=\sin \theta _0,\quad
\dfrac{\sqrt{N-1}}{\sqrt{N}}=\cos \theta 0. \end{aligned}
(10.9)
Vector $\infty$$\left| {\Psi _0}\right\rangle $$ we present as
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\Psi _0}\right\rangle = \sin \theta _0\left|
{q 0}\right\rangle +\cos \theta 0\left| {p}\right\rangle , \end{aligned}$$
(10.10)
      $$\left| {p}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{N-1}}\sum _{q\ne q_0}\left|
where {q}\right\rangle $$
                                                                                  is the
normalized superposition of all system states, not including the sought state.
The second step is the conversion of
$$\left| {\Psi _0}\right\rangle \rightarrow (HSH\mathcal {O})\left| {\Psi
                                                                           . Consider
0}\right\rangle $$
separately the HSH operator. According to the definition of S, the following equality is performed
for this product
$$\begin{aligned} HSH = 2H\left| {0}\right\rangle \left\langle {0}\right| H-
HIH=2\left| {\Psi _0}\right\rangle \left\langle {\Psi _0}\right| -I.
\end{aligned}$$
(10.11)
Let us prove the supporting statement.
```

```
Lemma. The result of a m-time application of the operator $\$\mathcal {U}$$$ to the state
$$\left| {\Psi _0}\right\rangle $$ can be written as follows:
$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {U}^m\left| {\Psi 0}\right\rangle = \sin \theta
_m\left\{q_0\right\}\right\} + \cos \theta - m\left\{q_0\right\}
\end{aligned}$$
(10.12)
where the real constant $\s$\theta \_m$$ equals
$$\ \left\{ aligned} \theta \_m=\theta \_0+m\arcsin \dfrac\{2\sqrt\{N-1\}\\{N\}.
\end{aligned}$$
(10.13)
Proof of the Lemma.
We introduce the auxiliary vector
$\left| {\Psi k}\right\rangle = \sin \theta k\left| {q 0}\right\rangle + \cos
\theta = k\left| \{p\}\right| 
                                                                       , where
$$$k=1, 2, \dots , m$$. The ket vector $$$\left| {\Psi _k}\right\rangle $$ in its physical sense
represents the result of applying the operator \( \sigma_\$\) mathcal \( \U \) to
$$\left( \mathbb{S} \right) {\ O}\right) \
Using the method of mathematical induction, we will prove that the formula (10.12) is valid for all
natural m. To do this, we calculate the action of the single operator \$ mathcal \{U\} on
$$\left| {\Psi k}\right\rangle $$.
$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {U}&\left| {\Psi _k}\right\rangle = \sin
\theta_k\
\{U\}\left\{p\right\}\right\} \ amp;\sin \theta _k\, HSH\,
\mathcal{O}\left(0\right) = \mathcal{O}\left(0\right) + \mathcal{O}\left(0\right) 
HSH\left| {q 0}\right\rangle +\cos \theta k HSH\left| {p}\right\rangle
{\nonumber \}={\abel{eq:kamp;-sin \theta k, (2\left| {\Psi 0}\right\rangle}}
{\Psi _0}\righti_0}\righti_0}
{\nonumber \}={\amp;-\sin \theta_k\, (2\left| \frac{\psi}{\amp;-\sin \theta_k\}, (2\left| \frac{\psi}{\amp;-\sin \theta_k\})
_0|q_0}\right\rangle \left| {\Psi _0}\right\rangle -\left| {q_0}\right\rangle
)+\cos \theta _k (2\left\langle {\Psi _0|p}\right\rangle \left| {\Psi
0}\right\rangle -\left| {p}\right\rangle ). \end{aligned}$$
(10.14)
Then we use the equality (10.10).
$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {U}\left| {\Psi _k}\right\rangle =&-\sin
\theta_k[2\sin \theta_0(\sin \theta_0)] = \frac{q_0}{right + \cos \theta_0}
0\left| {p}\right\rangle }-\left| {q 0}\right\rangle ]{}\nonumber \\{}&
{} +\cos \theta_k[2\cos \theta_0(\sin \theta_0)] 
\theta _0\left| {p}\right\rangle )-\left| {p}\right\rangle ]. \end{aligned}$$
(10.15)
After performing simple trigonometric transformations, we obtain
```

```
 \begin{aligned} \mathbf{U}\left[ {\Psi_k}\right] = {\&\left| \{q_0\}\right] (\sin \theta_k\cos (2\theta_0)+\cos \theta_k\sin (2\theta_0)) \nonumber \{\}+{\&\left| \{p\}\right] (\cos \theta_k\sin (2\theta_0)) \left| \{p\}\right] (\cos \theta_k\sin (2\theta_0)) {\sin \theta_k\sin (2\theta_0)} {\sin \theta_k\sin (2\theta_0)} {\sin \theta_k\sin (2\theta_0)} {\sin \theta_k\sin (2\theta_0)} (\cos \theta_k\sin \theta_k\sin
```

Thus, each subsequent application of the \$\$\mathcal {U}\$\$ operator results in adding the constant \$\$2\theta \_0\$\$ to the trigonometric function argument in (10.16). The lemma is proved.

From the formula  $(\underline{10.12})$ , you can see that the amplitude of probability of detection of the sought state \$\$\left| {q\_0}\right\rangle \$\$ as a result of the measurement procedure is changed by the harmonic law. Depending on the parameter m, the amplitude and therefore the probability may increase or decrease.

Let us show that the probability of an erroneous result of Grover's algorithm satisfies the asymptotic estimate O(1/N).

Solution.

Thus, the asymptotic complexity of the quantum search algorithm is equal to \$\sim\$\$\$O(\sqrt{N})\$\$ and much less than its classical analogue. Nevertheless, it should be noted that to solve the

problem of searching the target element in *ordered* data structures, there are known effective classical algorithms (binary search algorithm with a  $$$$O(\log_2 N)$$$  complexity on average, interpolation search with a  $$$$O(\log_2 \log_2 N)$$$  complexity on average). Compiling quantum analogues of these algorithms is a complex, not fully solved at the present time problem.

# References

#### 1. 1.

Knuth DE (1998) The art of computer programming. Sorting and searching, vol 3, 2nd edn. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts

#### 2. 2.

McConnell JJ (2001) Analysis of algorithms: an active learning approach. Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Sudbury, Massachusetts

# 3. 3.

Grover LK (1996) A fast quantum mechanical algorithm for database search. In: Proceedings of the twenty-eighth annual ACM symposium on theory of computing (STOC'96), pp 212–219

#### 4. 4.

Grover LK (1996) Quantum mechanics helps in searching for a needle in a haystack. Phys Rev Lett 79(2):325–328

# 5. 5.

Boyer M, Brassard G, Høyer P, Tapp A (1998) Tight bounds on quantum searching. Fortschritte Physik 4-5:493-505

# **Review Questions**

#### 1. 1.

Define bit and qubit.

# 2. 2.

What states are referred to the states of computational basis?

3. 3.
How is the scalar product operation of two complex vectors introduced?
4. 4.
Write down the orthonormality condition of the vector system.
5. 5.
What is a gate?
6. 6.
Please, explain how the quantum state measurement is performed.
7. 7.
List the main elements of a quantum computer.
8. 8.
What role do registers play in a quantum computer?
9. 9.
Write down Pauli and Dirac matrices.
10. 10.
Define the commutator and the anticommutator of the two matrices.
11. 11.
Write the Jacobi identity for commutators.
12. 12.

Which matrix is called a block matrix?

13. 13. How is the product of operators \$\\$\\$U\_1\\$\\$, \$\\$\\$\\$U\_2\\$\\$, ..., \$\\$\\$U\_n\\$\\$ defined? 14. 14. Give definition of quantum circuit. 15. 15. Specify the main operations with one qubit. 16. 16. Write down the matrix representation of Hadamard operator. 17. 17. How the quantum circuits represent the result of the state measurement? 18. 18. What quantum operations are applied to a two-qubit system? 19. 19. Formulate the theorem of universal set of elements. 20.20. Specify the states forming the Bell basis. 21. 21. Give the definition of an entangled quantum state.

22. 22.

Explain the nonlocality property of quantum theory.

23. 23.

24.	24.
	Formulate the no-cloning theorem.
25.	25.
	What is the quantum teleportation procedure?
26.	26.
	Draw a quantum circuit, with which a quantum teleportation can be performed
27.	27.
	Specify the main Boolean algebra operations.
28.	28.
	List the methods of Boolean function defining.
29.	29.
	Is it possible to build a disjunctive normal form for any Boolean function?
30.	30.
	Which set of Boolean functions is called universal for classical computations?
31.	31.
	List the elements of Zhegalkin basis.
32.	32.
	How the Sheffer stroke works?
33	33.
JJ.	
	What is the difference between a Toffoli gate and a Fredkin gate?

Why is Bell state also referred to as an EPR pair?

2 4	7.4
.34.	.34.

Describe how the gates of controlled quantum operations work.

# 35. 35.

Draw quantum circuits that implement Toffoli and Fredkin gates using only two-qubit gates.

# 36.36.

List the techniques for constructing the algebraic normal form of the Boolean function.

# 37. 37.

Formulate an algorithm for constructing a quantum circuit to implement a Boolean function in an algebraic normal form.

# 38. 38.

How is the classical discrete Fourier transform defined?

# 39.39.

Describe the Fast Fourier Transform algorithm.

# 40.40.

What is quantum discrete Fourier transform?

# 41. 41.

How many elementary gates need to be used to construct a Quantum Fourier Transform circuit?

# 42. 42.

Describe the phase evaluation algorithm.

# **Exercises**

```
1. 1.
```

Calculate Pauli matrices commutators \$\\$\sigma \_1,\!\sigma \_2]\$\$, \$\\$\sigma \_2,\!\sigma \_3]\$\$ and \$\\$\sigma \_3,\!\sigma \_1]\$\$.

# 2. 2.

Calculate the product of Pauli matrices \$\\$\sigma \_1\sigma \_2\sigma \_3\\$\\$.

# 3. 3.

What is the sum of products of the squares of Pauli matrices \$\\$\sigma \_1^2+\sigma \_2^2+\sigma \_3^2\$\\$?

#### 4. \* 4.

Prove a generalization of the **Euler formula** for Pauli matrices \$\$\sigma \_1\$\$, \$\$\sigma \_2\$\$, and \$\$\sigma \_3\$\$: \$\$\begin{aligned} \exp (\mathrm{i}\sigma \_k\varphi )=I\cos \varphi +\mathrm{i}\sigma \_k\sin \varphi \;\text { for }\;k=1,2,3,\;\varphi \in \mathbb {R}, \end{aligned}\$\$ (10.20) where \$\$I= \Big\{ begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \ 0 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix}\$\$ is the identity matrix of the second order.

#### 5. 5.

Prove that for any A, B, and C matrices of the same size the **Leibniz**<sup>2</sup> **identity** \$ \begin{aligned}{}[AB,C]\equiv A[B,C]+[A,C]B \end{aligned}\$\$ (10.21) is valid.

# 6. 6.

Is it true that if  $$$\{A,B\}=O$$  and  $$\{A,C\}=O$$ , then matrices B and C are commutative?

# 7. 7.

The set \$ {I, \sigma \_1, \sigma \_2, \sigma \_3\}\$\$ forms the basis in the vector space of complex matrices of size \$\$2\times 2\$\$. Prove that an arbitrary M matrix can be represented as a linear combination of \$\$\begin{aligned} M = a\_0 I + a\_1\sigma \_1 + a\_2\sigma \_2 + a\_3\sigma \_3, \end{aligned}\$\$ (10.22) where \$\$a\_{0\text{{}--{}}}3}\$\$ are some complex numbers.

```
expansion (10.22) from the previous exercise.
 9. * 9.
   Calculate the sum of the squares of the coefficient modules $\omega$$a 0$$, $\omega$$a 1$$,
   $$$a_2$$, and $$$a_3$$ in the expansion on the Pauli basis (10.22) of some unitary matrix
   U.
10. 10.
   What is the square of the Dirac matrix $\sim$$\beta $$?
11. 11.
   Calculate the product of Dirac matrices $\$\alpha _1\alpha _2\alpha _3\beta $\$.
12. 12.
   Calculate tensor products $\$\sigma _1\otimes \sigma 3\$\$,
   $$\sigma _3\otimes \sigma _1$$, $$\sigma _2\otimes \sigma _3$$,
   $$\sigma 3\otimes \sigma 2$$.
13. 13.
   Write down Pauli matrices in terms of tensor products using computational basis vectors
   $$\left| {0}\right\rangle $$ and $$$\left| {1}\right\rangle $$.
14. 14.
   Which of the following matrices are Hermitian?
      1. (1)
        \$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & \amp;\{\} 2+\mathrm\{i\}\\ 2-\mathrm\{i\}\&\amp;\{\} -2
        \end{bmatrix} $$
      2.(2)
        $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} 0 \end{bmatrix} $$;
      3.(3)
```

Find the coefficients \$\infty\$\$a 0\$\$, \$\infty\$\$a 1\$\$, \$\infty\$\$a 2\$\$, and \$\infty\$\$a 3\$\$ in the

```
$\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \begin{bmatrix} 2\mathrm{i}&{}
                                        3\operatorname{mathrm}_{i}\ -3\operatorname{mathrm}_{i}\ 2\operatorname{mathrm}_{i}\ 
                            4. (4)
                                        \$$ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \amp; \{\} 1 & \amp; \{\} -1 \\ 0 & \amp; \{\} -1 & \amp; \{\} 1
                                        \end{bmatrix} $$
                            5. (5)
                                        \$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & amp;{} -\mathrm{i}\\ -\mathrm{i}&{} 0
                                        \end{bmatrix} $$
                            6. (6)
                                        $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 &{} 0 &{} 2 \\ 0
                                        \alpha;{} -\max\{i\} \approx 0 \ 2 \approx p;{} 0 \ \% 2 \approx p;{} 0 \approx p;{}
                                        \mathrm{i}\end{bmatrix} $$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    ;
                            7. (7)
                                        \$$ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \amp;{} 1 & \amp;{} 1 & \amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & \amp;{} 1
                                        \alpha;{} \operatorname{i}_{amp;{}} \operatorname{i}_{i}^{1} \
                                        \{\}\ 1 \& mp; \{\}\ -1 \setminus 1 \& mp; \{\}\ -1 \& mp; \{\}\ -1 \& mp; \{\}\ 1 \& mp; \{\}\ -1 \& mp; \{\}\ 1 \& mp; \{\}\ -1 \& mp; \{\}
                                        \end{bmatrix} $$
                            8. (8)
                                        $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} 1
                                        \alpha;{} -1 \mbox{ amp;}{} -1 \m
                                        {} -1 & amp; {} -1 & amp; {} 1 \end{bmatrix} $$
15. 15.
                 Which of the following matrices are unitary?
                              1. (1)
                                        $$ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 2 \\ 2 & amp;{} 3 \end{bmatrix} $$;
                            2. (2)
                                        $$ \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & amp;{} \mathrm{i}\\
                                        \mathrm{i}&{} 2 \end{bmatrix} $$
```

```
3. (3)
        \$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \amp;{} 2 & \amp;{} 3 \\ 3 & \amp;{} 2 & \amp;{} 1
        \end{bmatrix} $$
     4.(4)
        \$ \dfrac{1}{3} \begin{bmatrix} 2+\mathrm{i}&{} 2\mathrm{i}\\
        -2\mathrm{i}&{} -2+\mathrm{i}\end{bmatrix} $$
     5. (5)
        $$\\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{10}} \begin{bmatrix} 3 &\amp;{} \mathrm{i}\\ -
        \mathrm{i}&{} 3 \end{bmatrix} $$
     6.(6)
        $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{\cosh (2\pi )}} \begin{bmatrix} \cosh \pi &{} -
        \mathrm{i}\sinh \pi \\ -\mathrm{i}\sinh \pi & amp;{} \cosh \pi \end{bmatrix}
        $$
     7. (7)
        \$$\\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\\begin{bmatrix} e^{-3\mathrm{i}} & amp;{} 0
        &{} 0 \setminus 0 &{} 1 &{} 0 \setminus 0 &{} 0 &{}
        e^{3\operatorname{mathrm}\{i\}} \end{bmatrix} $
     8. (8)
        $\dfrac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 1 & amp;{} 1 \ 1
        \alpha;{} -\mathcal{i} & mp;{} -1 & mp;{} \cdot 1 & mp;{} \cdot 1 & mp;{} \cdot 1
        \mathrm{i}\end{bmatrix} $$
16. 16.
   The elements of matrix $\infty$$M(\theta )$$ depend on the real-valued parameter $\infty$$\theta $$:
   $$\left(1+\cos \theta\right) M = \left(\frac{1}{2}(1+\cos \theta)\right)
   &{} \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\sin \theta &{} \dfrac{1}{2}(-1+\cos \theta
   ) \  \ \\ -\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\sin \\ theta & amp;{} \\ cos \\ theta & amp;{} -\dfrac{1}
   \left(\frac{2}\right)\sin \theta \left(\frac{1}{2}(-1+\cos \theta) & mp;{} \right)
   {\sqrt{2}}\sin \theta & \ensuremath{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta & \ensuremath{\sqrt{2}}(1+\cos \theta) \ensuremath{\sqrt{2}}.
   \end{aligned}$$
```

(10.23)

Determine if the matrix \$\infty\$\$M(\theta )\$\$ is Hermitian? unitary?

### 17. 17.

#### 18. 18.

Find all complex Hermitian matrices commuting with the real matrix \$\$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 \n 1 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix} \$\$.

# 19. \* 19.

Find all complex unitary matrices commuting with the real matrix \$\$ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 \n 2 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix} \$\$.

#### 20. \* 20.

Let *U* be arbitrary unitary matrix of size  $\$$2\times 2$$ . Is there a matrix *V* with the property  $\$$V^2=U$$ ?

#### 21, 21,

How many real parameters are necessary and sufficient to set the state of one qubit?

#### 22. 22.

The **fidelity** of two states described by vectors \$ \left| {\psi \_1}\right\rangle \$\$ and \$ \left| {\psi \_2}\right\rangle \$\$, is called a real number \$ \mathcal {F}=|\left\langle {\psi \_1|\psi \_2}\right\rangle |^2\$\$.

#### 1. (1)

Prove that \$\$F = 1\$ if the states  $\$\$\left| {\phi _1}\right|$  and \$\$ = 0\$ if the states are orthogonal.

# 2. (2)

Calculate the fidelity of single-qubit states

```
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi {1}}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}
                 [\left\{0\right\}\right] = e^{\left(mathrm{i}\right)} [1] 
                 \end{aligned}$$
                 (10.25)
                 $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi _{2}}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}}
                 [\left| {0}\right\rangle + e^{\mathrm{i}\varphi 2}\left| {1}\right\rangle ],
                 \end{aligned}$$
                 (10.26)
                 where $\$0\legslant \varphi \quad \legslant 2\pi \$\$.
23. 23.
       Calculate the fidelity of single-qubit states
       $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi _{1}}\right\rangle = e^{\mathrm{i}\gamma
       \{1\}\} [\cos (\theta {1}/2)\left| \{0\}\right| + e^{\min\{i\}\operatorname{d}} 
       _{1}}\sin (\theta_{1}/2)\left\{ 1\right\} 
       (10.27)
       $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi {2}}\right\rangle = e^{\mathrm{i}\gamma}
       _{2} [\cos (\theta _{2}/2)\left| _{0}\right\rangle + e^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}
       _{2}\ (\theta _{2}/2)\left| _{1}\right\rangle ], \end{aligned}$$
       (10.28)
       where $$0\legslant \theta \{1,2}\legslant \pi $$,
       $$0\leqslant \varphi _{1,2},\gamma _{1,2}<2\pi $$.
24, 24,
       Prove Schwarz<sup>3</sup> inequality (which is also called Cauchy<sup>4</sup>–Bunyakovsky<sup>5</sup>–Schwarz
       inequality):
       for arbitrary vectors \( \sum_\$\\ \right\\ \rig
       $$\left| {y}\right\rangle \in \mathbb {H}$$ the inequality
       $$\begin{aligned} \left|\left\langle {x|y}\right\rangle \right| ^2\legslant
       \label{left} $$\left( x|x\right)\right = \left( y|y\right) \cdot \left( x|x\right) . $$
       (10.29)
       is valid. The equality in (10.29) holds if and only if the vectors \( \sigma_\$ \left \| \{x}\right \rangle \$$
       and $\infty\\right\rangle $$ differ by a scalar multiplier, i.e., the vectors are
       proportional.
25, 25,
       Prove that if the states $\$\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle $$ and
       $\left| {\psi 2}\right\rangle $$ are orthogonal, then the Pythagoras theorem
       $$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {\psi _1+\psi _2|\psi _1+\psi _2}\right\rangle
       = \left\langle {\psi 1 \right\rangle + \left\langle {\psi 2 \psi
       _2}\right\rangle \end{aligned}$$
       (10.30)
       is valid.
```

Write the state \$\\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ of the quantum system as a vector-column corresponding to the computational basis:

1. (1)

\$\$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \left| {010}\right\rangle \$\$;

2.(2)

\$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \left| {101}\right\rangle \$\$.

# 27. 27.

The considered quantum system is formed by n interacting qubits. Write the state \$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ of the quantum system in the form of a vector-column corresponding to the computational basis:

1. (1)

\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \left| {00\dots 011}\right\rangle \$\$;

2. (2)

\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \left| {11\dots 110}\right\rangle \$\$.

#### 28, 28,

A student conducting an experiment in a chemical laboratory accidentally filled a page of a quantum computing summary with reagent, on which a vector of some three-qubit state \$\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ was written. As a result, we were unable to read some symbols. If you mark such symbols "\*", the record will look as follows: \$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = {}&\dfrac{1}{10} (\left| {\mathbf {\*\*}}00}\right\rangle +2\left| {001}\right\rangle -4\left| {010}\right\rangle +\mathrm{i}\left| {011}\right\rangle {\mathbf {\*}}\right\rangle +\left| {101}\right\rangle +\left| {101}\right\rangle +\left| {110}\right\rangle +\left| {\mathbf {\*}}}\left| {\mathbf {\*}}}\left| {\mathbf {\*}}}\left| {\mathbf {\*}}}\left| {\mathbf {\*}}}\left| {\mathbf {\*}}}\right\rangle ). \left| {\mathbf {\*}}}\right\rangle }.

Recover the state vector \$\s\$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle \$\$ written in the compendium if one character "\*" matches exactly one original character.

# 29. 29.

```
$\$\left| {\phi }\right| = \left(\left| \{0\}\right| -\left| \{1\}\right| \right)/ \end{thense} . Compute the tensor product <math display="inline">$\| \{psi \}\right| \end{thense} . Compute the tensor product <math display="inline">\| \{psi \}\right| \end{thense} .
```

```
30, 30,
   Determine whether the basis
    $$\begin{aligned} \left\{ \dfrac{1}{10} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\
   3\operatorname{mathrm}_{i}\end{bmatrix},\ \dfrac{1}{10} \operatorname{bmatrix} 3\operatorname{mathrm}_{i}\
   1 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \end{aligned}$$
   (10.32)
   is orthonormalized.
31, 31,
   Determine what is the result of the measurement of the state
   $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{1+\mathrm{i}}
    \{6\}\left\{0\right\}\right\} = +\left\{0\right\}\left\{0\right\}\right\} = +\left\{0\right\}\left\{0\right\}
   \end{aligned}$$
   (10.33)
   in the computational basis \$\{\left| \{0}\right\rangle,\left| \{1}\right\rangle \\\$$?
32, 32,
   Determine what is the result of the measurement of the state
   $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{5+\mathrm{i}}
    {6}\left| {0}\right\rangle +\dfrac{1-3\mathrm{i}}{6}\left| {1}\right\rangle
   \end{aligned}$$
   (10.34)
   in the basis $\ins$$B_1=\{\left| \{0\\right\rangle,\left| \{1\\right\rangle \\}$$ and
   $$B_2=\{\left| {+}\right\rangle ,\left| {-}\right\rangle \}$$, where
   $\left| \{+}\right\rangle =\dfrac\{1}\{2}\(\left| \{0}\right\rangle +\left|
    {1}\right\rangle )$$
   $\left| \{-}\right\rangle =\dfrac\{1}\{2}\(\left| \{0}\right\rangle -\left|
   {1}\right\rangle )$$
33. 33.
    What is the result of the measurement of the state
   $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{2+3\mathrm{i}}
    {7}\left| {0}\right\rangle +\dfrac{6}{7}\left| {1}\right\rangle
   \end{aligned}$$
   (10.35)
   in the basis $\$\B 1=\{\left| \{0\\right\rangle,\left| \{1\\right\rangle \\\\\}\$\$ and
    $$B 2=\{\left| {+}\right\rangle ,\left| {-}\right\rangle \}$$, where
   $\left| \{+}\right\rangle =\dfrac\{1}\{2}\(\left| \{0}\right\rangle +\left|
    {1}\right\rangle )$$
    $$\left| {-}\right\rangle =\dfrac{1}{2}(\left| {0}\right\rangle -\left|
                                                                                      ?
   {1}\right\rangle )$$
34, 34,
   What is the result of the measurement of the state
   $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = (1-\mathrm{i})\dfrac{7}
    {10}\left| {0}\right\rangle +(1+\mathrm{i})\left| {1}\right\rangle
   \end{aligned}$$
```

```
(10.36)
       $$B 2=\{\left| {+}\right\rangle ,\left| {-}\right\rangle \}$$, where
       $\left| \{+}\right\rangle =\dfrac\{1}\{2}\(\left| \{0}\right\rangle +\left|
        {1}\right\rangle )$$
       $$\left| {-}\right\rangle =\dfrac{1}{2}(\left| {0}\right\rangle -\left|
                                                                                                                                                                           ?
       {1}\right\rangle )$$
35. 35.
       Calculate the result of the quantum circuit action
                  ../images/505754 1 En 10 Chapter/505754 1 En 10 Figa HTML.png
       on the qubit, which is initially in the state $\$\left| \{0\\right\rangle \$\$.
36. 36.
       Calculate the result of the quantum circuit action
                  .../images/505754_1_En_10_Chapter/505754_1_En_10_Figb_HTML.png
       on the qubit, which is initially in the state $\$\left| \{1}\right\rangle $\$.
37. 37.
       Calculate the result of the quantum circuit action
                  ../images/505754 1 En 10 Chapter/505754 1 En 10 Figc HTML.png
       on the gubit, which is initially in the state
       $$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle =u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left| {1}\right\rangle
                                                                                                                                                                           , where
       \$$u,v\in \mathbb{C}$$.
38. 38.
       Determine what will be equal to the measurement result in a computational basis
       $$\{\left| {0}\right\rangle , \left| {1}\right\rangle \}$$:
                  .../images/505754_1_En_10_Chapter/505754_1_En_10_Figd_HTML.png
39.39.
       Consider a two-qubit system brought to the state
        $$\left| {\Psi }\right\rangle =\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\big (\left| {0}\right\rangle
       \left| \left| \right| { \si _1 \right \ _1 \ | \{1\} \right| { \si _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \ _2 \ | \
                                                                                                                                                                          , where
       \big )$$
       $$\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle $$ and $$$\left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle $$ are some
       normalized one-qubit quantum states. Apply Hadamard operation to the first qubit and
       perform a measurement of the first qubit. What is the result of this measurement?
```

40.40.

It is known that a two-qubit system is set to the state \$\$\$\left| {\psi }\right| = \left| {10}\right| {10}\right| + \mathrm{i} \sqrt{2}{5}}\left| {11}\right| {11}\right| \$\$ . A CNOT operation is performed over the system, after which Hadamard operation is applied to the second (controlled) qubit. What state will the system be in?

# 41.41.

## 42.42.

#### 43, 43,

Show that the quantum circuit

```
../images/505754_1_En_10_Chapter/505754_1_En_10_Fige_HTML.png converts the state $$ \left| { \gamma _1 \approx _2 \right| $$ to $$ \left| { \gamma _1 \approx _2 = _1 \right| $$.
```

# 44. 44.

Implement a CNOT gate using only Hadamard gate and controlled *Z*.

#### 45, 45,

Implement the Fredkin gate using a quantum circuit that uses three Toffoli gates.

#### 46, 46,

Check if the set \$ \\vee , \wedge , 1\\\$ is universal.

# 47. \* 47.

Is it possible to implement a Toffoli gate using a quantum circuit that uses only Fredkin gates without auxiliary qubits?

48, 48,

Consider the transformation to which corresponds the following quantum circuit:

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Figf\_HTML.png

What Boolean function of two arguments  $\$$f(q_1,q_2)$ \$ with condition  $\$$q_3=0$ \$ does this circuit implement?

49.49.

How many elementary gates contains the quantum circuit from Example <u>6.2</u> on page 33 that implements operation

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_10\_IEq168\_HTML.gif?

50.50.

Write the result of applying

1. (1)

Toffoli gate;

2. (2)

Fredkin gate

51. 51.

Suggest a circuit that implements an arbitrary unitary operation *U* controlled by two qubits:

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Figg\_HTML.png

52. 52.

At the exam on the course of quantum computing the student is offered to analyze the following circuit, the input to which is submitted the state \$ \left| {01}\right\rangle \\$. Remembering that the Hadamard transformation H coincides with the inverse transformation \$ \\$\\$H\times H = I\\$\\$ (see Example \(\frac{3.2}{2}\) on page 12), the student concludes that the state of the first qubit does not change.

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Figh\_HTML.png

Is the student right?

53. 53.

It is known that the two-qubit system is brought to the Bell state (4.1). Calculate the result of the conversion X applied to each of the two qubits.

54. 54.

It is known that the two-qubit system is brought to the Bell state (4.1). Calculate the result of the conversion Z, applied to each of the two qubits.

55. 55.

Define the criterion (i.e., the necessary and sufficient condition) that the state of the two-\$\\$\alpha \left| \{00}\right\rangle +\beta \left| \{01}\right\rangle +\gamma qubit system \left| \{10}\right\rangle +\delta \left| \{11}\right\rangle \\$\$ is presented as a product of \$\\$\left| \{\psi \_1}\right\rangle \left| \{\psi \_2}\right\rangle \\$\$ some states \$\\$\left| \{\psi \_1}\right\rangle \\$\$ and \$\\$\left| \{\psi \_2}\right\rangle \\$\$.

56, 56,

Show that the Bell states \$\\$\left| {\beta \_1}\right\rangle \$\\$\\left| {\beta \_4}\right\rangle \$\\$ form an orthonormalized basis.

57, 57,

On an exam for a quantum computing course, a student states that a single qubit  $$\$ \right = u\left( \frac{0}\right) + v\left( \frac{1}\right)$  student states that a single qubit controlled NOT and auxiliary  $$\$ \right]$ 

../images/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Figi\_HTML.png

Is the student right?

58, 58,

```
Prove that GHZ-state<sup>7</sup> 
 $$\left| {\text {GHZ}}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {000}\right\rangle +\left| {111}\right\rangle )$$ is entangled 
 [1].
```

59, 59,

Suggest a quantum circuit which, based on the fiduciary state \$\\$\left| \{000\\right\\rangle \\$\\$, forms the state

```
$$\left| {\text {GHZ}}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left|
              {000}\right\rangle +\left| {111}\right\rangle )$$
60, 60,
              Suggest a quantum circuit which, based on the state
              $$\left| {\underbrace{00\dots 0} {n\text { qubits}}}\right\rangle $$ forms the state
             $$\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {00\dots 0}\right\rangle +\left| {11\dots
             1}\right\rangle )$$
61.61.
             Prove that the four-qubit state
             $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{2}(\left|
              {0001}\right\rangle +\left| {0010}\right\rangle +\left| {1100}\right\rangle
             +\left| {1111}\right\rangle ) \end{aligned}$$
             is entangled.
62.62.
             The set of qubits is brought to the state
             $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{5}(2\left|
              {000}\right\rangle +2\sqrt{2}\left| {010}\right\rangle +2\left|
              {101}\right\rightarrow +3\left\{ 111\right\}
             (10.37)
             With what probability the result of measuring the second qubit will be equal to
             $$\left| {0}\right\rangle $$?
63.63.
             Determine which of the following states are entangled:
                      1. (1)
                                $$\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {00}\right\rangle
                                +\mathrm{i}\left| {01}\right\rangle )$$
                      2.(2)
                                $\left| {\psi 2}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{2}(\left| {00}\right\rangle +\left|
                                {01}\right\rangle +\left| {10}\right\rangle +\left| {11}\right\rangle )$$
                      3. (3)
                                $$\left| {\psi 3}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{3\sqrt{2}}\left| {00}\right\rangle
                                -\left(5\right)\left(5\right)\left(6\right)\left(6\right)\right) + \left(6\right)\left(6\right)
                                \{10\}\right. -dfrac\{1\}\{4\}\cdot \{5\}\{3\}\right. = \{11\}\cdot \{1
```

```
4. (4)
```

```
$\$\left \{ \right _4\right = \left (3 \right {7}\left (00\right )^{1} {3} {28}\left (01\right )^{1} \left (01\right )^{1} \left (10\right )^{1} \left (11\right )^{
```

# 64.64.

Two states are given:

 $$$ \left\{ \left( 1 \right) \left( 1 \right) \right] \left( 1 \right) \left( 1 \right) \right] $$ \left( 1 \right) \left( 1$ 

Determine which one is entangled and which one is not entangled.

### 65.65.

Build ANF for the function  $$\$f(x_1,x_2)\$\$$ , defined by the vector of values \$\$mathbf  ${\alpha} = (1011)\$\$$ .

#### 66.66.

Using the undefined coefficients method, build Zhegalkin polynomial using the vector of function values:

1. (1)

\$\varvec{\alpha }\_g=(0011\;0110)\$\$;

2.(2)

\$\varvec{\alpha }\_h=(1100\;1100\;0001\;0000)\$\$.

#### 67, 67,

Using the equivalent transformation method, build Zhegalkin polynomial for each of the following functions:

1. (1)

 $$$g(x_1,x_2,x_3)=(x_1\cdot x_2)\circ (x_1\cdot x_3)$$$ ;

2. (2)

 $$\h(x_1,x_2,x_3,x_4)=\ensuremath{(x_1\rightarrow x_2)}\rightarrow (x_3\left(x_1\right)$ 

68.68.

Using any of the known methods, build an algebraic normal form for each of the following Boolean functions:

1. (1)

$$$$f(x_1,x_2,x_3) = (x_1x_2x_3)\neq (\text{overline}\{x\}_1\text{overline}\{x\}_3)$$$$

2. (2)

$$$\$g(x_1,x_2,x_3) = (x_1)\le x_2\le x_3(\varepsilon x_1,x_2,x_3) = (x_1)\le x_3(\varepsilon x_3)$$

69. \* 69.

Using any of the known methods, build an algebraic normal form for each of the following Boolean functions:

1. (1)

$$\$$f(x_1,x_2) = x_1\rightarrow x_1 + x_2 = x_1 = x_1 = x_2 = x_$$

2.(2)

$$$$f(x_1,x_2,x_3) = (x_1\rightarrow x_2)\rightarrow x_3$$;$$

3. (3)

$$$$$
\$ $f(x_1,x_2,x_3,x_4) = ((x_1\rightarrow x_2)\rightarrow x_3)\rightarrow x_4$ \$

4. (4)

$$$\$f(x_1,x_2,x_3,x_4,x_5) = (((x_1\circ x_2)\circ x_2)\circ x_3)\circ x_3)\circ x_3$$

70. 70.

Determine which function \$\\$\\$P:[0,7]\rightarrow \mathbb \{Z}\_0\\$\\$ is implemented by the following quantum circuit:

71.71.

Make a table of values of the function g(x) implemented using the following quantum circuit:

.../images/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Figk\_HTML.png

72.72.

Construct a quantum circuit that implements the function  $\$\$f(x)=(x+2)^2\$$ . Assume that the domain of the function is the set  $\$\$\{0,1,2,\dots,7\}$ \$\$.

73. 73.

Create a quantum circuit that matches the number of the planet of the Solar System number of its satellites.

74, 74,

Let us denote the roots of the equation  $\$$z^N=1$$ , where N is a natural number, by  $\$$\omega_k$$  omega  $_k$$ ,  $\$$k=0,\dots$ , N-1\$ (see page 46). Prove that the following statements are correct [2]:

1. (a)

on the complex plane, the points corresponding to \$\sim\\$\$\omega \_k\$\$ values are located at the tops of the correct *N*-angle inscribed in the unit circle which center is located at the beginning of coordinates;

2. (b)

 $$$ \omega_{k+n/2}=-\omega_k \$  for even N and  $$$0\leq x^2 = x^$ 

3. (c)

\$\sum \limits \_{k=0}^{N-1}\omega \_k=0\$\$ for \$\\$N>1\$\$;

4. (d)

75, 75,

Prove the validity of identities for the roots of the unity \$\$\omega \_k\$\$, where \$\$0\leqslant k\leqslant N-1\$\$, for all natural values *N*:

1. (a)

```
$$\prod \limits {k=0}^{N-1}(z-\omega k)=z^N-1$$;
                 2. (b)
                         $$\sum \limits _{k=0}^{N-1}(\omega _k)^d= {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 0,}
                         \quad 1\leq 1\leq 1 
76. * 76.
          Prove the validity of identities for the roots of unity of Nth degree $\$\omega \_k$\$, where
          $$k=0,1,\dots , N-1$$, for all values $$N>2$$:
                 1. (1)
                         $$\sum \prod \lim_{k=0}^{N-2}\omega_k = 0 
                         1}$$
                 2.(2)
                         $$\sum \limits _{k=1}^{N-2}\dfrac{\omega _{k-1}\omega _{k+1}}
                         {\omega_k}=-(1+\omega_{N-1})$
                 3. (3)
                         $$\sum \limits _{\begin{array}{c} k,k'=0\\ k < k' \end{array}}^{N-1}
                         \omega_k = 0
                 4. (4)
                         $$\sum \limits _{\begin{array}{c} k,k'=0\\ k < k' \end{array}}^{N-1}
                         _2}$$
77. 77.
          Let $\infty\$$ be a discrete Fourier transform of vector $\infty\$$ of length
          N. Prove the Parseval<sup>\frac{3}{2}</sup> theorem, connecting the full energy of a discrete signal in time and
          frequency domains:
          $$\left( \frac{1}{N}\right) = \frac{1}{N-1} |x_k|^2 = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} |x_k|^2 = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=0}^{N}\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} |x_k|^2 = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} |x_k|^2 = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=
          _{k=0}^{N-1} |y_k|^2. \end{aligned}$$
          (10.38)
78. 78.
```

Using the discrete Fourier transform definition, calculate \$ \mathcal  $\{F\}$  \mathbf  $\{x\}$  \\$\$, if: 1. (1) \$\$\mathbf {x}=(0,1,0,1)\$\$; 2. (2) \$\$\mathbf {x}=(1,0,1,0)\$\$. 79. 79. Calculate the DFT of the vector \$ mathbf  $\{x\}$  of length N with components equal to the binomial coefficients \$\$x n=C {N-1}^n\$\$, where \$\$\$0\legslant n\legslant N-1\$\$ and the binomial coefficients  $\sim \$\$C_p^q = \frac{p!}{q!(p-q)!}\$\$$  are denoted by  $\sim \$\$C_p^q\$\$$ . 80.80. Calculate the DFT of the vector \$ mathbf  $\{x\}$  of length \$ N=2\m\$ for some integer positive *m*, if 1. (1) \$\$\mathbf {x}=(\underbrace{0,0,\dots,0,0}\_{N/2 \text { zeros $\}$ ,\underbrace $\{1,1,\cdot dots,1,1\}$   $\{N/2 \cdot \{units\}\}$ )\$\$ 2. (2) \$\$\mathbf {x}=(\underbrace{1,1,\dots,1,1}\_{N/2 \text { units}},\underbrace $\{0,0,\cdot dots,0,0\}_{N/2 \cdot \{zeros\}}$ )\$\$ 81.81. Prove that Hadamard gate implements one-qubit Fourier transform. 82.82. Calculate the Quantum Fourier transform of *n*-qubit state \$\$\left| {00\dots 0}\right\rangle \$\$.

83.83.

At the input of the Fourier quantum discrete transform circuit let us give a superposition of states with equal coefficients

 $$$\left| {\phi } \right| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum_{q=0}^{2^n-1}\left| {q}\right| $$. What is the state of the output of this circuit?}$ 

#### 84.84.

Calculate the result of the action of the Fourier quantum transform on n-qubit state \$\$\$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2^{n-1}}}\sum \_{q=0}^{N-1}\cos \dfrac{2\pi q}{N}\cdot | {q}\cdot | {q

### 85.85.

Suggest a quantum circuit to implement the inverse Fourier transform \$\$\mathbb{F}^{-1}[\varvec{y}]=\varvec{x}\$\$: \$\$\Big\{x\_n=\frac{1}{N}\sum\_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega^{-kn} y\_k, \;\0\Big\}

86.86.

Calculate the speedup achieved by the Quantum Fourier Transform algorithm compared to the classical Fast Fourier Transform algorithm.

87.87.

Calculate the speedup achieved by the Quantum Fourier Transform algorithm compared to the parallel version of the Fast Fourier Transform algorithm presented on page 47.

### **Answers, Hints, and Solutions**

1.

*Answer.* \$\$[\sigma \_1,\sigma \_2]=2i\sigma \_3\$\$, \$\$\$[\sigma \_2,\sigma \_3]=2i\sigma \_1\$\$, \$\$\$[\sigma \_3,\sigma \_1]=2i\sigma \_2\$\$.

2.

*Solution.*  $\$ \$\sigma \_1\sigma \_2\sigma \_3 = \mathrm{i}I\$\$, where *I* is the identity matrix of size  $\$ \$\$2\times 2\$\$.

3.

*Answer.*  $\Rightarrow$ \$\sigma \_1^2+\sigma \_2^2+\sigma \_3^2 = 3I\$\$, where *I* is the identity matrix of the second order.

Solution.

```
We will use the Taylor \frac{9}{5} formula to decompose the exponents into a power series: \frac{9}{5} lighted e^t = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{j}{j!}. \end{aligned}$$
In this formula, we substitute \frac{9}{5} lighted \frac{9
```

 $\varphi \in \mathbb{R}$ 

```
and
                    . We obtain
$$\begin{aligned} \exp (\mathrm{i}\sigma _k\varphi ) = \sum
{j=0}^{\int infty} \frac{(\mathbf{i}\cdot i)}{i!} = \sum_{i=0}^{i} infty}
\end{aligned}$$
Note that \$\sigma k^2 = I$$ (see formula (2.3)), which leads to the validity of
\$$\sigma k^{2}}=I$$ and \$$\sigma k^{2}1}=\sigma k$ for all non-negative integer
i. Next, we present the decomposition in the Taylor series with two sums, by odd and even
degrees:
$$\begin{aligned} \exp (\mathrm{i}\sigma _k\varphi ) ={}&\sum
_{j=0}^{\in } \ Big (\left(\frac{\mathbf{i}^{2j}\right) - k^{2j}} 
\{(2j)!\}+ \frac{i}^{2j+1}\simeq k^{2j+1}\operatorname{Arghi}^{2j+1}
{(2j+1)!}  {j=0}^{\infty} 
\frac{(-1)^j I \cdot (2j)}{(2j)!} + \sup \{j=0\}^{\left(\inf y\}}
\dfrac{(-1)^j\backslash (2j+1)}{(2j+1)!} {}\nonumber \\
\{(2j+1)!\} {}\nonumber \\{}={}\&I\cos \varphi +\mathrm{i}\sigma
_k\sin \varphi . \end{aligned}$$
Obtained sums \$ \sum \limits _{j=0}^{\in} \ and
$$\sum \limits _{j=0}^{\infty} \dfrac{(-1)^j\varphi ^{2j+1}}{(2j+1)!}$$ converge to
$$\cos \varphi $$ and $$\sin \varphi $$, respectively. As a result, we get:
$$\begin{aligned} \exp (\mathrm{i}\sigma _k\varphi )=I\cos \varphi
+\mit{i}\simeq _k\sin \varepsilon { for }\; \ { 1,2,3}},\
\mathbb{R}. \ aligned}$$
```

Proof.

5.

```
Convert the right side of the equality (10.21) based on the definition on the page 7: $$\begin{aligned} A[B,C]+[A,C]B = A(BC-CB) + (AC-CA)B. \end{aligned}$$
```

Next, we expand the brackets and give the similar summands, and then once again use the definition of the commutator:

```
$$\left(A[B,C]+[A,C]B={\&ABC-ACB+ACB-CAB} \right) = {\&ABC-ACB+ACB-CAB=[AB,C]. \end{aligned}$
```

Thus, the identity (10.21) is proved. Note that similar transformations easily prove the Leibniz identity in another form: \$\$\begin{aligned}{}[A,BC]\equiv B[A,C]+[A,B]C. \end{aligned}\$\$ 6. Solution. It is not true. The following counterexample can be used as a statement from the problem \$\$\begin{aligned} A= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} 1  $\end{bmatrix},\quad B= \end{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \ \ 0 & amp;{} -1$  $\end{bmatrix},\quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & amp;{} 1 \ 1 & amp;{} 0$ \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}\$\$ In this case the equalities \$\$[A,B]=[A,C]=O\$ are valid, while \$\$\begin{aligned}{}[B,C]= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} 0 \end{bmatrix}- $\begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\$  $\begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{$ \end{aligned}\$\$ Consequently, *B* and *C* matrices are not necessarily commutative. 7. Proof. Denote the elements of matrix M through \$\$m {ij}\$\$, \$\$\$i,j=1,2\$\$: \$\$\begin{aligned} M = \begin{bmatrix} m {11} & amp;{} m {12} \\ m {21} & amp; {} m {22}. \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}\$\$ The expansion (10.22) leads to a system of linear equations relative to the coefficients \$\$\$a {0\text {{}--{}}3}\$\$: \$\$\begin{aligned} a\_0 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 \\ 0 & amp;{} 1  $\end{bmatrix} + a 1 \end{bmatrix} 0 \end{bmatrix} 1 \hline 2 \end{bmatrix} 0 \end{bmatrix}$  $\end{bmatrix} + a_2 \end{bmatrix} 0 & amp;{} -\mathrm{i}\$  $\mathbf{i}$ &{} 0 \end{bmatrix} + a\_3 \begin{bmatrix} 1 &{} 0 \ 0 & amp;  $\{\}$  -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} m\_{11} & amp;  $\{\}$  m\_{12} \\  $m_{21} \mbox{ amp;} \mbox{ } m_{22} \mbox{ } \mbox{ } m_{3}, \mbox{ } \mbox{ } m_{22} \mbox{ } \mbox{ } m_{3} \mbox{ } \mbox{ } m_{3} \mbox{ } \m$ \$\$\begin{aligned} {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} a 0 \phantom {++{}+a 1} \phantom  $\{\{\}+a_2\} + a_3 = m_{11}, \ \ \{\{\}+a_0\} \ a_1 - a_1 = a_1 - a_2\}$  $\mathrm{1}_{i}a_2 + \mathrm{phantom} \{ \} + a_3 \} = m_{12}, \ \mathrm{phantom} \{ \} + a_0 \} a_1 + a_2 \}$ 

Let us calculate the determinant of the resulting system by applying expansion through loworder determinants:

\end{aligned}\$\$

```
$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 0 & amp;{} 1 \\
0 \times mp;\{\} 1 \times mp;\{\} - mathrm\{i\} \times mp;\{\} 0 \setminus 0 \times mp;\{\} 1 \times mp;\{\} 
\mathrm{mathrm}\{i\}&\{\} 0 \\ 1 &\{\} 0 &\{\} 0 &\{\} -1
\end{bmatrix} ={}&1\times \begin{bmatrix} 1 &{} -
\mathbf{i}&{} 0 \setminus 1 &{} \mathbf{i}&{} 0 \setminus 0 &{} 0
&{} -1 \end{bmatrix} - 1\times \begin{bmatrix} 0 &{} 1 &{}
-\text{mathrm}_{i}\ 0 \ \text{amp}_{i}\ 1 \ \text{amp}_{i}\ 0 \ \text{amp}_{i}\ 0
\end{bmatrix} {}\\{}={}\&1\times (-1)\times \begin{bmatrix} 1 &
 \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & 
\end{bmatrix} {}\frak{mathrm{i}}-1(2\mathrm{i})=
-4\mathrm{i}\neq 0. \end{aligned}$$
The non-zero determinant of the system is a sufficient condition for existence of an unique
solution $\sim$$$(a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3)$$. Consequently, an arbitrary matrix
 m_{22} \end{bmatrix} $
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 can be
represented as a linear combination
 \$$\begin{aligned} M = a_0 I + \sum _{i=1}^3 \sigma _i. \end{aligned}$$
Note. The set \$$\{I, \sigma _1, \sigma _2, \sigma _3\}$$, where I is the identity matrix of
vector space of complex matrices of the second order.
Solution.
Let us represent an arbitrary matrix M in the following form
$$\ M = \left( \frac{11}{2} \right) 
m \{21\} \& m \{22\} \end{bmatrix}, \end{aligned}
where $\$\text{m {ij\in \mathbb {C}}$$ for $\$\$i,\\in \{1,2\}$$. With the help of algebraic
transformations, we obtain
 \$$\begin{aligned}&\begin{bmatrix} m_{11} &{} m_{12} \
m_{21} \mbox{amp;} \mbox{ } m_{22} \mbox{bmatrix} {} \mbox{ } ={} \mbox{amp;} \mbox{dfrac}{1}{2}
(m_{12}+m_{21})+(m_{12}-m_{21}) \setminus (m_{12}+m_{21})-(m_{12}-m_{21})
m \{21\}) & amp; {} (m \{11\}+m \{22\})-(m \{11\}-m \{22\}) \end{bmatrix} {}\\
 {}={}&\dfrac{1}{2} \left( (m_{11}+m_{22})I +
(m_{12}+m_{21})\simeq _1 + m_{i}(m_{12}-m_{21})\simeq _2 + m_{i}(m_{12}-m_{21})\simeq _1 + m_{i}(m_{12}-m_{21})\simeq _1
```

9.

8.

Solution.

First method

 $(m_{11}-m_{22})\simeq a_3 \cdot c$ . \end{aligned}\$\$

 $(m_{11}-m_{22}) \cdot (m_{11}-m_{22}) \cdot (m_{11}-m_{12}) \cdot (m_{11}-m_$ 

Thus, the vector of the Pauli basis expansion coefficients is equal to

 $(m_{11}+m_{22}), (m_{12}+m_{21}), \text{ mathrm}\{i\}(m_{12}-m_{21}),$ 

\$\$\begin{aligned} (a 0,a 1,a 2,a 3) = \dfrac{1}{2} \left(

Using the unitarity property of matrix U and the ratio for the products of Pauli matrices, write down the following:

 $\begin{aligned} & amp; UU^{\dag} = \left( a_0 \ I + \sum_{i=1}^3 \right) \\ & i'right) \left( a_0 \ I + \sum_{i=1}^3 \right) \\ & (a_0 a_0^* + a_1 a_1^* + a_2 a_2^* + a_3 a_3^*) \\ & (a_0 a_0^* + a_1 a_1^* + a_2 a_2^* + a_3 a_3^*) \\ & (a_0 a_1^* + a_1 a_2^*) \\ & (a_0 a_3^* + a_3 a_0^*) \\ & (a_0 a_3^* + a_3^* + a_3^*) \\ & (a_0 a_3^* + a_3^*) \\ &$ 

Since matrices \$\$I, \sigma \_1, \sigma \_2, \sigma \_3\$\$ form the basis, the coefficient at *I* in the expansion \$\$UU $^{\dag} = I$ \$\$ is equal to one:

\$\$\begin{aligned} a\_0a\_0^\*+a\_1a\_1^\*+a\_2a\_2^\*+a\_3a\_3^\* = 1. \end{aligned}\$\$

Consequently, the sum of squares of coefficients modules of Pauli basis expansion of unitary matrix is equal to

 $$$\$  {\langle gin{aligned} |a\_0|^2+|a\_1|^2+|a\_2|^2+|a\_3|^2 = 1. \end{aligned}\$\$

The simplicity of the solution of the exercise in this way manifested itself in the fact that it was not necessary to write down an explicit form of elements of the initial unitary matrix U.

### Second method

```
Components of the vector $\overline{\Sigma}$$(a 0,a 1,a 2,a 3)$$ are represented through elements of the
                                                                             $$$$ U = \begin{bmatrix} u_{11} & amp;{} u_{12} \\ u_{21} & amp;{}
source matrix u {22} \end{bmatrix} $$
by formulas:
\frac{1}{2}(u_{12}+u_{21}),\\[9pt]&a_2 = \frac{mathrm{i}}{2}
(u_{12}-u_{21}),\quad a_3 = \frac{1}{2}(u_{11}-u_{22}).
\end{aligned}$$
Considering this, let us calculate \$$\sum \limits _{i=0}^3 |a_i|^2$$:
 $$\ {i=0}^3 = i^2 {} 
 {\color=0.05$} & amp; \dfrac{1}{2}(u_{11}+u_{22}) \eft( \dfrac{1}{2}(u_{11}+u_{22}))
(u_{12}+u_{21}) \right) ^* {} {} ={} & mp; dfrac{mathrm{i}}{2}(u_{12}-u_{21}) )
u \{21\} \setminus \{dfrac\{mathrm\{i\}\}\} \{2\} \setminus \{21\} \setminus (dfrac\{1\}) \setminus (
 {2}(u_{11}-u_{22})\left(\frac{1}{2}(u_{11}-u_{22})\right)^* {}
 {}&\dfrac{1}{4} \big (
 |u_{11}|^2+u_{11}u_{22}^*+u_{11}^*u_{22}^+
 |u_{12}|^2+u_{12}u_{21}^*+u_{12}^*u_{21}^+|u_{21}|^2 {}_{\infty}
 |u| \{12\}| \land 2-u| \{12\}u| \{21\} \land *-u| \{12\} \land *u| \{21\} + |u| \{21\}| \land 2-|u| \{11\}| \land 2-|u| \{12\}| \land 2-|u| 
\end{aligned}$$
Due to the unitarity of the matrix U, we have
```

```
\$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} u {11} & amp;{} u {12} \\ u {21}
&{} u_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_{11} &{} u_{12} \
u_{21} & p;{} u_{22} \end{bmatrix}^{\dag} {\&\begin{bmatrix}
u_{11} & mp;{} u_{12} \setminus u_{21} & mp;{} u_{22} \cdot d{bmatrix}
&{} u_{11}u_{21}^*+u_{12}u_{22}^* \
u_{11}^*u_{21}+u_{12}^*u_{22} \ \text{amp}; \{\} |u_{21}|^2+|u_{22}|^2
\end{bmatrix} = I, \end{aligned}
from where follow the properties of unitary matrix coefficients
▶$$|u {11}|^2+|u {12}|^2=1$$, ▶$$|u {21}|^2+|u {22}|^2=1$$. As a result we obtain
$$\ [i=0]^3 |a_i|^2 = \frac{1}{2}  
\underbrace{|u_{11}|^2+|u_{12}|^2}_{1}+\underbrace{|u_{21}|^2+|u_{22}|}
^2_{1} \biggr ] = 1. \end{aligned}$$
Note. The result of this exercise demonstrates that the vector $\overline{\sigma}$$(a 0,a 1,a 2,a 3)$$ of the
Pauli basis expansion coefficients of the unitary matrix is normalized to unity.
Answer. \geqslant$\beta \2 = I$$, where I is the identity matrix of size \geqslant$$4\times 4$$.
Answer.
$$\begin{aligned} \alpha _1\alpha _2\alpha _3\beta = \begin{bmatrix} 0
\alpha;{} 0 \mbox{ amp;} - \mbox{mathrm{i}&} 0 \mbox{ $\backslash$ 0 &} 0 \mbox{ $\backslash$ amp;} 0 
\alpha_{i}\ -\mathrm{i}\\\mathrm{i}&\amp;{} 0 &\amp;{} 0 &\amp;{} 0 \\ 0
&{} \mathrm{i}&{} 0 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$
Solution.
Let us use the definition (2.14):
$$\begin{aligned} \sigma 1\otimes \sigma 3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & amp;
```

**10.** 

11.

**12.** 

```
$$\begin{aligned} \sigma 3\otimes \sigma 2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & amp;
                                    \{\} - \text{mathrm}\{i\} \approx mp; \{\} 0 \ \text{mathrm}\{i
                                    &{} 0 \ 0 \ \text{amp};{} 0 \ \text{amp};{} 0 \ \text{amp};{} \mathrm{i}\\ 0 \ \text{amp};{} 0 \ \text{amp};
                                    &{} -\mathrm{i}&{} 0 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$
 13.
                                 Answer.
                                  Using the matrix representation
                                  $$$\left| {0}\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} $$ and
                                  $$\left| {1}\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} $$, we obtain
                                  $$\ \begin{aligned}&\sigma 1 = \left\{0\right\}  \right\rangle \otimes
                                 \left\langle \{1\right| + \left| \{1\right\rangle \otimes \left\langle \{0\right|,
                                 \mbox{\constraint} \mbox{\constraint} = -\mbox{\constraint} \mbox{\constraint} \mbox{\c
                                    {1}\right| + \mathrm{i}\left| {1}\right\rangle \otimes \left\langle {0}\right|,
                                  \mbox{\color=0}\ amp;\sigma _3 = \left| {0}\right\rangle \otimes \left\langle {0}\right| -
                                 \left| {1}\right\rangle \otimes \left\langle {1}\right| . \end{aligned}$$
                                  Note that another matrix from the Pauli basis (the identity matrix of size $\infty$$\$\times 2\$\$)
                                  can be represented as
                                  {1}\right\rangle \otimes \left\langle {1}\right| $$
14.
                                 Answer. Hermitian matrices are (1), (2), (7), and (8).
15.
                                Answer. Matrices (2), (4), and (8) are unitary.
16.
                                 Answer. Matrix M belongs to the unitary matrix class, but it is not Hermitian.
17.
                                 Proof.
                                  Taking into account that \$$D_N^{\dag} = D_N$, let us calculate the product
                                  $$D ND N^{\dag }$$:
                                  ../images/505754_1_En_10_Chapter/505754_1_En_10_Equ178_HTML.pn
                                  The diagonal elements of the product are equal to
                                  $$\begin{aligned} \left( D_ND_N^{\dag }\right) _{ii} = {}&\left(
                                  -1+\dfrac{2}{N}\right) ^2+\underbrace{\dfrac{2}{N}\cdot dfrac{2}}
                                    \{N\}+\langle 2\}\{N\}\cdot dfrac\{2\}\{N\}+\langle dfrac\{2\}\{N\}\cdot df
                                    \{N\}\} \{(N-1)\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{\}=\{\}\&\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}\} \{\}\setminus \{times\}
                                 ^2+(N-1)\cdot (N-1)\cdot (N-2)=1 \cdot (N-1)\cdot (N-2)
                                  for \$$i = 1, 2, \text{dots}, N$$. In turn, non-diagonal matrix elements of
                                  \$$D ND N^{\dag}  are equal to
```

 $\begin{aligned} \left( D_ND_N^{\dag} \right)_{ij} = {\& \left(-1+\dfrac{2}{N}\right)_{ij} = {\& \le$ 

*Note.* Matrix *P* that meets the property  $$\$P^2=P$$  is called *projection matrix*, or *projector*. It is easy to see that  $$\$D_N$$  is a projector. It is known that eigenvalues of any projection matrix only take values 0 and 1.

18.

Answer.

All such matrices have the following form \$\$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} a &{} b \\ b &{} a \end{bmatrix}, \end{aligned}\$\$\$



where a,

**19.** 

Solution.

### $2 \times 2$

```
$$\begin{aligned} {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} (m \ 11}+m \ 12})-
(m_{11}+m_{21}) = 0, (m_{11}+m_{12})-(m_{12}+m_{22}) = 0, (m_{11}+m_{12})
(m \{21\}+m \{22\})-(m \{11\}+m \{21\}) = 0, \ (m \{21\}+m \{22\})-
(m_{12}+m_{22}) = 0, \end{array}\right. \end{aligned}$$
or, after simplifications,
\$$\begin{aligned} {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} m {12}-m {21} = 0,\\
Consequently, any matrix commuting with
\$$ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix} $$, has the form
\$$ M = \begin{bmatrix} m {11} & amp;{} m {12} \\ m {12} & amp;{}
m {11} \end{bmatrix} $$
                                                                                                                             , where
$$m_{11}$ and $m_{12}$ are some complex numbers.
Next, let us use the unitarity condition \$\$MM^{\dag} = I\$\$, where I is the identity matrix:
$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & mp;{} m_{12} \\ m_{12}}
&{} m {11} \end{bmatrix}\times \begin{bmatrix} m {11} &{}
\begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} & m_{11} & m_{11} \end{array} \end{array}
\end{bmatrix}\times \begin{bmatrix} m_{11}^* & amp;{} m_{12}^* \
m_{12}^* \mbox{ & amp;} \ m_{11}^* \mbox{ bmatrix} = \mbox{bmatrix} 1 \mbox{ & amp;} \
0 \setminus 0 \& amp; \{\} 1 \setminus bmatrix\}, \end{aligned}
which results in a system of equations
$$\left(11\right)^2+|m_{12}|^2=1, \
m_{11}m_{12}^*+m_{12}m_{11}^*=0, \
m \{12\}m \{11\}^*+m \{11\}m \{12\}^*=0, \|m \{12\}\|^2+|m \{11\}\|^2=1.
\end{array}\right. \end{aligned}$$
We leave only independent equations in the obtained system.
$$\ {\left\{ \begin{array}{\ll} \m_{11}\\ 2 + \m_{12}\\ 2 = 1,}
\m_{11}m_{12}^* + m_{12}m_{11}^* = 0. \end{array}\right.
\end{aligned}$$
Let us proceed to the trigonometric representation of complex numbers
$$m_{11} = \rho_1 e^{\mathrm{i}\over 1}
\$$m_{12} = \rho _2 e^{\mathrm{i}\varphi _2}$$, where \$$\rho _1,\rho _2\geqslant 0$$,
$$\varphi _1,\varphi _2\in [0,2\pi )$$. Conditions for $$\rho _{1,2}$$ and
$\varphi \{1,2\$\$ take the following form:
$$\left( \frac{1}{2} \right) {\clin} {\cl
\rho 1\rho 2\big (e^{\mathrm{i}(\varphi 1-\varphi 2)}+e^{-\mathrm{i}}
(\varphi 1-\varphi 2)\\big) = 0. \end{array}\right. \end{aligned}$$
These conditions are satisfied by the following parameter values:
(1) \$ \rho 1=0\$, \$ \rho 2 = e^{\mathrm{i}\delta }\$, and
\$$\delta \in \mathbb {R}$$,
(2) \$ \rho 2=0$$, \$ \rho 1 = e^{\mathrm{i}\delta'}$$, and
$$\delta '\in \mathbb {R}$$,
(3) $\sqrt{sho} 1\rho 2\gegslant 0$$,
$$\cos (\varphi _1-\varphi _2)=0 \Leftrightarrow \varphi 2=\varphi
1+\dfrac{\pi }{2}+\pi k$$
```

\$\$\\in \mathbb {Z}\$\$. As a result, matrix *M* can be represented in the following form: \$\begin{aligned} M = \begin{bmatrix} \rho 1 e^{\mathrm{i}\varphi 1} &{} \pm \mathrm{i}\sqrt{1-\rho  $_1^2$ e^{\mathrm{i}\varphi  $_1$ } \\ \pm  $e^{\mathrm{i}\over 1} \cdot e^{\mathrm{i}\over 1} \cdot e^{\mathrm{i}\over 1} \cdot e^{\mathrm{i}\over 1}$  $\mathbf{i}\$  amp;{} \rho 1 \end{bmatrix}, \end{aligned}\$\$ where \$ rho 1\geqslant 0\$\$ and \$ varphi 1\in [0,2\pi)\$\$. Using the notations \$\$\rho 1 = \cos \chi \$\$, \$\$\chi \in [0,2\pi) \\$\$, and taking into account the relation  $\$\$  \pm \sqrt{1-\rho 1\\^2} = \sin \chi \\$\$, we obtain: \$\$\begin{aligned} M = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \chi & amp;{} \mathrm{i}\sin \chi \\ \mathrm{i}\sin \chi & amp;{} \cos \chi \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}\$\$ (10.40)Any matrix that commutates with the real matrix

20.

Solution.

Let us prove that a unitary matrix V, such that the properties  $\$$V^2=U$$  and  $\$$VV^{\dag} =I$$  are fulfilled, exists for any unitary matrix U of the second order.

\$ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} 1 \end{bmatrix} \$\$ has the form (10.40).

It is clear that the matrix *V* built in this way is unitary and has the property  $\$$V^2=U$$ .

21.

Solution.

Qubit is described by a vector in a two-dimensional Hilbert space

```
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = u\left| {0}\right\rangle + v\left| {1}\right\rangle , \end{aligned}$$
where u, v are some complex numbers. The parameters
$$u=\mathrm {Re\,}u+\mathrm {Im\,}u$$ and
$$v=\mathrm {Re\,}v+\mathrm {Im\,}u$$ are subject to normalization condition
$$\begin{aligned} |u|^2 + |v|^2 = 1. \end{aligned}$$
Consequently, of the four real parameters $$$\mathrm {Re\,}$$u, $$\mathrm {Im\,}u$$,
$$$\mathrm {Re\,}v$$ and $$$\mathrm {Im\,}u$$$ only three are independent.
```

As a result, three real parameters are necessary and sufficient to set an arbitrary state of one qubit. Note that if we consider that the states of qubits which differ only by the global phase factor are identical:

```
$$\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle =e^{\mathrm{i}\delta }\left| {\psi }\right\rangle $$ number of real parameters will be equal to two.
```

```
Thus, it is possible to parameterize an arbitrary state of a qubit in the form $ \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \cos (\theta /2)\left| {0}\right\rangle + e^{\mathrm{i}}\varphi }\sin (\theta /2)\left| {1}\right\rangle , \end{aligned}$$ where $ \theta \in [0,\pi )$$ and $ \symbol{\symbol{1}}\varphi \in [0,2\pi )$$ are real numbers.
```

22.

Solution.

```
(1) The properties of the fidelity are derived from the orthonormalization properties of complex vectors. In fact, if the states \$ \left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle $$ and \$ \left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle $$ coincide, i.e., the equalities \$ \left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle = \left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle = \left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle = \left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle \left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle \left| {\psi _2}\right\rang
```

*Note.* They say that the value \$ \mathcal {F}\$\$ characterizes closeness of states in the vector space of states. The value \$ \mathcal {F}=1\$\$ reflects the state identity, while \$ \mathcal {F}=0\$\$ reflects the maximum "noncoincidence" of such states [3, 4].

(2) Let us use the definition of the value \$\\$\mathcal \{F\}\\$.

```
$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {F} ={}&{}|\left\langle {\psi 1|\psi
2\ right\rangle |^2 {}\\{}={}&\dfrac{1}{4}\big |[\left| {0}\right\rangle
+ e^{\mathrm{i}\varphi _1}\left| {1}\right\rangle ]^*[\left| {0}\right\rangle +
e^{\mathrm{1}\over 2}\left[ {1}\right] 
_1\left\langle _1\right| _1\right| _1\right\rangle + _1\right| _1\right\rangle + _1\right| _1\right\rangle + _1\right\rangle + _1\right\rangle + _1\right\rangle + _1\rangle 
 _2}\left| {1}\right\rangle ]\big |^2 {}\\{}={}&\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{4}}
\left(0|0\right)\right) + e^{\mathrm{i}\over 2}\left(1-2\right)
\{0|1\}\right\rightarrow e^{-\mathrm{i}\cdot 1}\left(1,0\right)
+e^{\mathrm{l}}(\alpha i) -2-\alpha i
\end{aligned}$$
By virtue of the orthonormality of $\$\left\\langle \{i|j}\\right\\rangle =\\delta _\{ij}\$\$, we
obtain
$$\left(1}{4}\right) \
2-\nabla_1 = \cos^2[(\nabla_1 - 1)/2]. \end{aligned}
```

### Solution.

23.

```
According to the definition of the fidelity, we obtain
$$\begin{aligned}&\mathcal {F} = {}|\left\langle {\psi 1|\psi
 _2\ right\rangle |\\2 {}\\{}={}\&|\\{e\\\mathrm{i}\\gamma _1} [\\cos
(\theta 1/2)\left| {0}\right\rangle + e^{\mathrm{i}\varphi 1}\sin (\theta
2 \lceil \cos (\theta - 2) \right]  {\lambda \text{1}\varphi \ 2 \sin \ 2} \sin \ 2}
(\gamma - 1/2)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)
e^{\mathrm{1}}  (\theta 1/2)\left\langle 1\right 1
\mbox{\mbox{$1$}\cos (\theta_2/2)\left| eft \right| + e^{\mbox{\mbox{$1$}\cos (\theta_2/2)\left| eft \right|}}
2\sin (\theta 2/2)\left| {1}\right\rangle ] |\(^2 \{\}\\\}=
{\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mbox{\cos}(\mb
(\theta _2/2)\left\langle \{0|0\}\right\rangle + \cos (\theta
_1/2)e^{\mathbf{i}\cdot _2}\sin (\theta_2/2)\left( \frac{0}{1}\right)
{}\{}\\{}-{}&\cos (\theta 2/2)e^{\mathrm{i}}\varphi 1}\sin (\theta
_1/2\\left\\langle {1|0}\\right\\rangle - e^{\mathrm{i}(\varphi _2-\varphi
_1)\sin (\theta _1/2)\sin (\theta _2/2)\left\langle {1|1}\right\rangle |^2.
\end{aligned}$$
Let us perform algebraic transformations considering the orthonormality condition
\$$\left\langle {i|i}\right\rangle =1$$, if \$$$i=j$$, and
$$\left\langle {i|j}\right\rangle =0$$ if $$$i\ne j$$.
```

```
$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {F} ={}&\underbrace{|e^{\mathrm{i}}
(\gamma_2)^{1} | \cos(\beta_1) | (\beta_2)^{1} | \cos(\beta_1) |
e^{\mathrm{1}}(\bar{1}) = -1/2)\sin(\theta_1/2)
{}\={}&[\cos (\theta _1/2)\cos (\theta _2/2)-e^{\mathbb{1}}(\varphi
_2-\varphi _1)}\sin (\theta _1/2)\sin (\theta _2/2)] {}\\{} \times&[\cos
(\theta_1/2)\cos (\theta_2/2)+e^{\infty}(\theta_1/2)\cos (\theta_2/2)+e^{\theta_1/2}\cos (\theta_1/2)\cos (\theta_1/2)+e^{\theta_1/2}\cos (\theta_1/2)+e
(\theta _{1/2})\sin (\theta _{2/2})] {}\\{}={}&[\cos (\theta _{1/2})\cos (\theta
(\frac{2}{2})^2 + [\sin(\theta_{1/2})\sin(\theta_{2/2})^2 {} \
_1/2)\cos (\theta _2/2)\sin (\theta _1/2)\sin (\theta _2/2)\cos (\varphi _2-
\varphi 1). \end{aligned}$$
Then we will consider the trigonometric formulas
2a),\\&\\sin ^2 \cdot a{2} = \\dfrac{1}{2}(1-\\cos 2a),\\\&\\sin 2a =
2\sin a\cos a, \end{aligned}$$
valid for all real a. With these equalities taken into account, we will obtain
$$\left(1}{2}[1+\cos \theta] \right] = \left(1}{2}[1+\cos \theta]
 _2+\sin \theta _1\sin \theta _2\cos (\varphi _2-\varphi _1)]. \end{aligned}$$
For the purpose of further simplification, consider two unity vectors in the space
$$\mathbb {R}^3$$
$\begin{aligned} \varvec{n} 1 = \begin{bmatrix} \sin \theta 1\cos
\varphi _1 \\\sin \theta _1\sin \varphi _1 \\\\cos \theta _1 \end{bmatrix},\;\;
The vectors \$$\varvec{n} 1$$ and \$$\varvec{n} 2$$ clearly represent the state of qubits
of $\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle $$ and $\$\left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle $$ on the unity
sphere. With the help of a scalar product, it is easy to calculate the cosine of the angle
 $$\Delta $$ between the specified vectors:
$$\begin{aligned} \cos \Delta = \cos \theta _1\cos \theta _2 + \sin \theta
 1\sin \theta 2\cos (\varphi 2-\varphi 1). \end{aligned}$$
$$\ \text{ begin { aligned } \mathcal {F} = \dfrac{1}{2}[1+\cos \Delta],}
\end{aligned}$$
\$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal {F} = \cos \2(\Delta /2), \end{aligned}$$
where $\square$\Delta $\square$ is the angle between vectors $\square$\square$\varvec{n}_1\square$ and
$$\varvec{n} 2$$ in real space. In this form of answer recording, we clearly see the
fidelity properties: $\$\leqs\ant \mathcal \{F}\leqs\ant \1$$, and $\$\mathcal \{F}\=1$$ for
matching quantum states.
Proof.
Let us introduce the vector
$\left| {z}\right\rangle =\left| {x}\right\rangle -\lambda \left|
{v}\right\rangle $$
                                                                                                                                                                      . where
 $$\lambda $$ is a complex number.
```

24.

```
Based on the first property of a scalar product (see page 3) write down
                 $$\left\langle {z|z}\right\rangle \geqslant 0$$, or
                 $$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {z|z}\right\rangle = {}&(\left\langle
                 \{x\}\right. -\lambda ^*\left. \frac{y}\right. (\left. x\right. -\lambda ^*\left. \frac{y}\right. (\left. x\right. -\lambda ^*\left. \frac{y}\right. )
                \label{eq:lambda } \left( x|y\right) - \label{eq:lambda } \
                 \{y|x\}\right\rangle +|\lambda |^2\left\langle \{y|y\}\right\rangle \geqslant 0.
                 \end{aligned}$$
                 Next, consider two cases: \$ \left \{y\} \right \rangle = 0$$ and
                 $$\left| \{y\}\right| 
                 1.
                                  Let $\sim$\left| \{v\\right\\rangle = 0\$\shapers$. Then Schwarz inequality turns into an identity
                                  $$$0=0$$.
                 2.
                                  Let $\left| \{y\\right\\rangle \ne 0$$. Suppose
                                  $\lambda = \dfrac{\left\langle {y|x}\right\rangle }{\left\langle
                                  \{y|y\}\right\rangle \$$
                                  $$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {z|z}\right\rangle = \left\langle
                                  {x|x}\rightarrow {x|y}\rightarrow 
                                  {\left\langle {v|v}\right\rangle } \geqslant 0. \end{aligned}$$
                                  The resulting inequality can be rewritten in the following form:
                                  $$\begin{aligned} \left| \left\langle {x|y}\right\rangle \right| ^2\leqslant
                                  Thus, the Schwarz inequality is proved.
                 Inequality (10.29) goes into equality if
                 $\left| {y}\right\rangle = a\!\left| {x}\right\rangle $$ for some $\$a\in \mathbb {C}$$. In
                 reverse, if the equality
                 $$\\left\langle {x|y}\right\rangle |^2=\left\langle {x|x}\right\rangle
                \left( v|v\right) \approx 
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             is valid, this
                 entails $\infty\langle \{z\z\\right\rangle =0\$\ \text{and, in turn,}
                 $$\left| {x}\right\rangle =\lambda \left| {y}\right\rangle $$, where
                 \$$\lambda \in \mathbb {C}$$. Consequently, equality in (10.29) is met if and only if
                 vectors | $\left| \{x}\right\rangle $\$ and | $\$\left| \{y}\right\rangle $\$ differ by a multiplier,
                i.e., the vectors are proportional.
25.
                Proof.
```

Let us use the properties of the scalar product (see page 3):

```
$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {\psi 1+\psi 2|\psi 1+\psi 2}\right\rangle
         = \left\langle {\psi _1|\psi _1 \right\rangle + \left\langle {\psi _1|\psi
         _2}\right\rangle + \left\langle {\psi _2|\psi _1}\right\rangle + \left\langle {\psi
         _2|\psi _2}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}$$
         The summands \( \sum_$\left\\langle \psi _1\\psi _2\\right\\rangle \$ and
         $\left\langle {\psi 2|\psi 1}\right\rangle $$ turn to zero because of the orthogonality of
         $$\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle $$ and $$$\left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle $$. This way, for all
         $$\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle $$ and $$$\left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle $$, the equality is
                  $$\left\langle {\psi _1+\psi _2|\psi _1+\psi _2}\right\rangle = \left\langle
         valid {\phi 1}\right 1 + \left \frac{1}{\phi 1}\right 
         Pythagoras theorem is proved.
26.
        Answer.
               $\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0
         (1) \end{bmatrix} $$
                                                                                                                                                       ; (2)
         \end{bmatrix} $$
27.
        Answer.
               $$ \left| {00\dots 011}\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\
         (1) \forall 0 \in \mathbb{7}  $$
              $\left| {11\dots 10}\right\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ 1
         (2) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} $$
28.
        Answer.
         $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = {}&\dfrac{1}{10} (
        \left| {000}\right\rangle + 2\left| {001}\right\rangle - 4\left|
         {010}\right\rangle + \mathrm{i}\left| {011}\right\rangle {}\nonumber \\{}+
         {}&\mathrm{i}\left| {100}\right\rangle - \left| {101}\right\rangle + \left|
         \{110\}\right) + 5\left(3\right) + 111\right) + 1111\right) + 11111) + 11111
29.
         Solution.
         We perform the multiplication operation by removing parentheses:
```

```
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \left| {\psi }\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {0}\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {1}\right\rangle )\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {0}\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {1}\right\rangle \\ eft| {0}\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {1}\right\rangle \\ eft| {0}\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {0}\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {0}\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {1}\right\rangle \\ eft| {\psi }\right\rangle \\ eft| {\psi }\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {01}\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {10}\right\rangle -\mathrm{i}\left| {11}\right\rangle \\ eft| {1
```

```
We introduce designations for basis elements:
  $$\begin{aligned} \left| {e 1}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{10}
  \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3\mathrm{i}\end{bmatrix},\quad \left|
    \{e_2\}\right = \left(1\}{10}\right 
  \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$
  Let us check the compliance with the conditions
  $$\left\langle {e_i|e_j}\right\rangle =\delta _{ij}$$ for $$$i,j=1,2$$:
  $$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {e_1|e_1}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{10}
\begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & 
    {10} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \setminus 3 \setminus \{i\} \in \{b, i\} = \left(1\} \{10\} [1];
  -3\mathrm{i}] \times \dfrac{1}{10} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\
    3\operatorname{mathrm}_{i}\end{bmatrix} = \operatorname{dfrac}_{1}_{10}\operatorname{left}_{1+}
  (-3\operatorname{mathrm}\{i\})\operatorname{3\operatorname{mathrm}}\{i\}\operatorname{i}\} = 1, \operatorname{d}\{\operatorname{aligned}\}
  $$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {e 1|e 2}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{10}
\begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & 
    {10} \begin{bmatrix} 3 \neq i \ \ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \dfrac{1}{10}[1\;
  -3\operatorname{mathrm}{i} \times \operatorname{dfrac}{1}{10} \operatorname{bmatrix} 3\operatorname{mathrm}{i} \ 1
  \end{bmatrix} = 0; \end{aligned}
  $$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {e_2|e_1}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{10}
  \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & 
    \{10\} \setminus \{bmatrix\} 1 \setminus 3\setminus \{i\} \setminus \{bmatrix\} = \{fac\{1\} \} \}
  [-3\mathrm{i}\; 1] \times \dfrac{1}{10} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 \
    3\operatorname{mathrm}\{i\} = 0, \operatorname{aligned}\
    $$\begin{aligned} \left\langle {e_2|e_2}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{10}
  \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} 
    {10} \begin{bmatrix} 3 \cdot 1 \le d \cdot 1 \le d \cdot 1
  [-3\mathrm{i}\; 1] \times \dfrac{1}{10} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 3\mathrm{i}\ 1
  \end{bmatrix} = \dfrac{1}{10}\eft( (-3\mathrm{i})3\mathrm{i}+1\right) =
    1. \end{aligned}$$
  Consequently, the system $\$\{\left| \{e 1}\right\rangle,\left| \{e 2}\right\rangle \}\$ is
  orthonormalized.
```

**30.** 

```
Solution.
```

32.

```
$\begin{aligned} M = {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \;\; 0 \; \text {with a}
probability p = \frac{1}{18}, \frac{1}{11pt}; 1 ; \text{ with a probability }
Solution.
The wave function of qubit
$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle = u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left|
 {1}\right\rangle $$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    has the
following coefficients in the superposition of basis states:
 \$$u=\dfrac{1+2\mathrm{i}}{5}$$, <math>\$$v=\dfrac{2+4\mathrm{i}}{5}$$.
The result of the quantum measurement M in the basis
 $$\{\left| {0}\right\rangle ,\left| {1}\right\rangle \}$$ is zero or one with the probabilities
\$$|u|\^2$$ and \$$|v|\^2$$, respectively:
probability p_0 = \left( \frac{5+\max\{i\}}{6}\right) \left( \frac{5+\max\{i\}}{6} \right)
\frac{5+\mathrm{13}}{6}\right) ^*=\frac{13}{18}, [11pt] ;; 1 ; \text{ text}
 {with a probability } p_1 = \left( \frac{1-3\mathrm{mathrm}\{i\}}{6}\right) \left( \frac{1-3\mathrm{mathrm}\{i\}}{6}\right)
\frac{1-3\mathrm{mathrm}_{i}}{6}\right) ^*=\frac{5}{18}. \end{array}\right.
\end{aligned}$$
Consider the measurement procedure in the basis
$$B 2=\{\left| {+}\right\rangle ,\left| {-}\right\rangle \}$$. We express the vectors of the
computational basis through $\left| \{+\\right\rangle \$\ \and $\left| \{-\\right\rangle \\\\$\:
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {0}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left|
 {+}\right\rangle +\left| {-}\right\rangle ),\nonumber \\ \left| {1}\right\rangle =
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\left| {+}\right| {-}\right).
\end{aligned}$$
Consequently,
 $\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle ={}&
 {\define} \define \d
 \{6\}\left\{1\right\}\right\} \{1\}\operatorname{longular} \{1\}\operatorname{lon
 \{6 \cdot \{2\}\} (\left\{+\right\} \cdot \left\{+\right\} \cdot \left\{-\right\} \cdot \left
 3\mathrm{i}}{6\sqrt{2}}(\left| {+}\right\rangle +\left| {-}\right\rangle )
 {\nonumber \}={\amp;\dfrac{6-2\mathbb{1}}\left[6\right]}
 {+}\rightiht + \frac{4+4\mathbf{1}}{6\operatorname{sqrt}{2}}\left[ {-}\right]
 {+}\right\rangle +2\times \dfrac{1+\mathrm{i}}{3\sqrt{2}}\left|
 {-}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}$$
The probability of finding the system in the state $\$\left| \{+}\right\rangle $$ is equal to
$$\begin{aligned} p_+ = \left( \dfrac{3-\mathrm{i}}{3\sqrt{2}}\right)
\left(\frac{3-\mathrm{1}}{3}\right)^* = \left(\frac{5}{9}\right).
\end{aligned}$$
The same way we obtain the probability to detect the system in the state
$$\left| {-}\right\rangle $$:
```

```
$$\begin{aligned} p -= \left( 2\dfrac{1+\mathrm{i}}{3\sqrt{2}}\right)
                       \left( 2\left( 2\right) ^* = \left( 2\right) ^* = \left( 4\right) ^* = 
                       \end{aligned}$$
                       The equality $\sqrt{p}_++p_-=1$$ is valid, reflecting the law of total probability preservation.
35.
                        Solution.
                        The state of the qubit $\infty$$\left| \{0\\right\rangle $\$$ is described by the matrix
                        $$ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} $$. Taking into account the matrix representation
                        of quantum elements H, S, and X from Table 3.1 on page 13, we obtain
                        $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \rightarrow&\left| {\psi
                        '}\right\rangle {} \\ {}={}&\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1
                        &{} 1\1 \ amp;{} -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \&{} 0\ \\ 0
                        &{} \mathrm{i}\end{bmatrix} \times \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}
                        \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ & \end{array} & \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ 
                        \begin{bmatrix} 0 & amp;{} 1\\ 1 & amp;{} 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
                        1 \ 0 \ \left[ \frac{1-\text{mathrm}\{i\}}{2} \right]
                       \frac{1+\mathrm{mathrm}\{i\}}{2} \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}
                        Thus, as a result of the action of the quantum circuit on a qubit, which is in the state
                        $\left| {\psi }\right\rangle =\left| {0}\right\rangle $$, it will convert to the state
                        $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi '}\right\rangle =\dfrac{1-\mathrm{i}}{2}\left|
                        {0}\right\rangle +\dfrac{1+\mathrm{i}}{2}\left| {1}\right\rangle.
                       \end{aligned}$$
36.
                       Answer. As a result of the action of the quantum circuit on a qubit, which is in the state
                        $$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle =\left| {1}\right\rangle $$, it will convert to the state
                        $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi '}\right\rangle =\Big (-\dfrac{\mathrm{i}}
                        {\sqrt{2}}\ )\left| {0}\right\rangle -\Big (\dfrac{1-\mathrm{i}}{2}\Big
                       )\left| {1}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}$$
37.
                       Answer. The qubit, which is initially in the state
                        $$\left| {\psi }\right\rangle =u\left| {0}\right\rangle +v\left| {1}\right\rangle
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               , will convert to
                        $$
                                                                   $$\left| {\psi '}\right\rangle =\Big (\dfrac{1}{2}(1+\mathrm{i})u +
                                                                  \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\v\Big \\left| {0}\right\rangle +\Big (\\dfrac{1}{2}\)
                        the state (1+\mathrm{i})u - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}v\Big )\left| {1}\right\rangle $$
39.
                        Solution.
                       The quantum state $\$\left| {\Psi }\right\rangle $$ of the system after the action of the
                        Hadamard operator will be described by the vector $\$\left| {\Psi '}\right\rangle $\$:
                        $$\begin{aligned} \left| {\Psi }\right\rangle \rightarrow \left| {\Psi
                        '}\right\rangle = \dfrac{1}{2}\big ((\left| {0}\right\rangle +\left|
                        {1}\right\rangle )\left| {\psi 1}\right\rangle +(\left| {0}\right\rangle -\left|
                        {1}\right\rangle \ \left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle \big ). \end{aligned}$$
```

```
Grouping similar terms, we conclude that
$$\begin{aligned} \left| {\Psi '}\right\rangle = a_0\left| {0}\right\rangle
+a 1\left| {1}\right\rangle, \end{aligned}$$
where coefficients
$$a_0=\dfrac{1}{2}(\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle +\left| {\psi
   2}\right\rangle )$$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    and
$$a_1=\dfrac{1}{2}(\left| {\psi _1}\right\rangle -\left| {\psi
 2}\right\rangle )$$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    are the
probability amplitudes corresponding to the state of the first qubit
$$\left| {0}\right\rangle $$ and $$$\left| {1}\right\rangle $$, respectively. Next, we
calculate the square of the modulus $\sim$$ a 0$$.
\$$\begin{aligned} |a_0|^2&{}= a_0\,a_0^* = \dfrac{1}{2}(\left\langle)
{ \cdot _1} + \left( \cdot _2\right) \cdot \left( \cdot _1\right) + \left( \cdot _1\right) \cdot \left( \cdot _
_1\ right\rangle +\left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle ) {}\\&{} = \dfrac{1}{4}
(\left\langle {\psi 1|\psi 1}\right\rangle +\left\langle {\psi 1|\psi
_2}\right\rangle +\left\langle {\psi _2|\psi _1}\right\rangle +\left\langle {\psi
 _2|\psi _2}\right\rangle ). \end{aligned}$$
Taking into account the normalization of vectors $\infty$$\left| {\psi 1}\right\rangle $$ and
$$\left| {\psi _2}\right\rangle $$, and the symmetry properties of
$$\left\langle {\psi 1|\psi 2}\right\rangle =\left\langle {\psi 2|\psi
_1\right\rangle ^*$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    (see page 3),
we obtain
$$\ \begin{aligned} |a 0|\\\^2 = \dfrac{1}{4} (1+\left\langle {\psi 1|\psi
2\ right\rangle +\left\langle {\psi 2|\psi 1}\right\rangle +1) = \dfrac{1}
{2}(1+\text{mathrm } Re)\left(\frac{1}{\beta} _2\right).
\end{aligned}$$
Similar calculations lead to equality
$$\left(1-\right) = \left(1}{2}(1-\mathrm {Re}\right) = \left(\psi\right)
1|\psi 2}\right\rangle). \end{aligned}$$
As a result, the result of measuring M of the first qubit is equal to
$$\begin{aligned} M = {\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 0 \; \text {with}
probability p_0=\frac{1}{2}(1+\max {Re}\left| \frac{1}{psi} \right|)
2\ right probability p_1=\dfrac\{1\}\{2\}(1-
\mathrm {Re}\left\langle {\psi 1|\psi 2}\right\rangle ). \end{array}\right. }
\end{aligned}$$
Solution.
After applying the CNOT operation, we obtain the following:
$\begin{aligned} \left| {\psi }\right\rangle \rightarrow \left| {\psi
'\right\rangle = \sqrt{\dfrac{3}{5}}\left| {11}\right\rangle
+\mathrm{i}\sqrt{\dfrac{2}{5}}\left| {10}\right\rangle . \end{aligned}$$
```

Further, Hadamard operation with the second qubit will bring the system to the state

40.

\$\$\left| {\psi "}\right\rangle \$\$:

$$\begin{aligned} \left|\psi'\right\rangle \rightarrow \left|\psi''\right\rangle &= \sqrt{\frac{3}{5}} \left|1\right\rangle (\left|0\right\rangle - \left|1\right\rangle) / \sqrt{2} + i \sqrt{\frac{2}{5}} \left|1\right\rangle (\left|0\right\rangle + \left|1\right\rangle) / \sqrt{2} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3} + i \sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{10}} \left|10\right\rangle - \frac{\sqrt{3} - i \sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{10}} \left|11\right\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

41.

$$U_H|q\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle + (-1)^q|1\rangle)$$

Answer.

42.

$$|\psi_{\text{out}}\rangle = u |01\rangle + v |10\rangle$$

Answer.

**45.** 

Answer.

$$|q_1\rangle$$
 $|q_2\rangle$ 
 $|\overline{q}_1q_2 \oplus q_1q_3\rangle$ 
 $|q_3\rangle$ 
 $|q_1\rangle$ 
 $|q_1\rangle$ 
 $|q_1\rangle$ 
 $|q_1\rangle$ 

46.

Solution.

$$\{\vee, \wedge, 1\}$$

Each of the Boolean functions that form the set , has a monotone property. Therefore, it is impossible to obtain constant 0 by conjunction,



disjunction, and constant 1. Consequently, the set universal.

is not

47.

Solution.

It is impossible to build a Toffoli gate using only Fredkin gates, without auxiliary qubits. It follows from the property of the Fredkin gate to save the number of zeros and ones.

Obviously, since Fredkin gate is universal, any quantum circuit, including CCNOT, can be implemented if there are auxiliary qubits. One way is to use three instances of Fredkin gate if

 $|0\rangle$ 

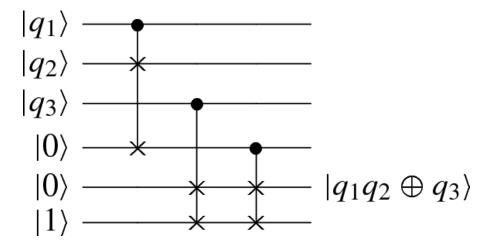
you have three auxiliary qubits, two of which are pre-installed in

, the third is pre-

 $|0\rangle$ 

installed in

. The quantum circuit obtained in this way is shown below:



48.

Answer. The circuit implements the disjunction of the arguments

$$f(q_1, q_2) = q_1 \vee q_2$$

49.

Solution.

CC...C NOT

As shown in Example  $\underline{6.2}$  on page 33, operation n times can be built from two CC...C NOT

symmetrically arranged circuits for  $\overline{n-1}$  times and one Toffoli gate placed in the center. The CCCNOT circuit contains three Toffoli gates. Therefore, for the full number of gates, we get a recurrence relation:

$$\begin{cases} R_n = 2R_{n-1} + 1, \\ R_3 = 3. \end{cases}$$

Its solution, as easy to see, is the function

$$R_n = 2^{n-1} - 1 \text{ for } n \ge 3.$$

Therefore, this circuit contains an exponential number of elementary gates.

**50.** 

Answer.

$$U_{\text{CCNOT}} |\psi\rangle = \frac{1}{2} (|000\rangle + |001\rangle + |100\rangle - |110\rangle),$$
  
$$U_{\text{CSWAP}} |\psi\rangle = \frac{1}{2} (|000\rangle + |001\rangle + |100\rangle - |111\rangle) = |\psi\rangle.$$

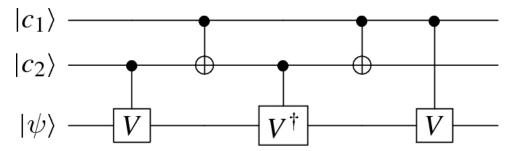
Solution.

The problem is solved by analogy with the construction of Toffoli gate from two-qubit elements (see page 34). Let us introduce a unitary operator *V*, which has the property

$$V^2 = U$$

. This operator, as proven in Exercise  $\underline{20}$ , exists for any U and is unitary.

Then the next quantum circuit implements the controlled unitary operation U:



To prove the correctness of the built quantum circuit, let us consider several cases.

$$|c_1\rangle = |0\rangle$$

(1) . On the third qubit, there acts either an identical

$$VV^{\dagger} \quad VV^{\dagger} \equiv I$$

operator I or a product of operators the third qubit does not change.

. Since

$$|c_1\rangle = |0\rangle |c_1\rangle = |0\rangle$$

(2) , . The operator

$$VV^\dagger$$

acts on the third qubit. The state of the third qubit does not change.

$$|c_1\rangle = |c_2\rangle = |1\rangle \qquad |0\rangle$$

, The third qubit  $VV\ket{q}\equiv U\ket{q}$ 

changes to

 $|c_1\rangle$ 

and

Thus, there is executed a unitary operation U controlled by two qubits

 $|c_1\rangle$ 

**52.** 

Answer.

The student's statement is false because the CNOT operator generally does not leave the controlling qubit unchanged. The calculation using the matrix representation of the

 $U_H$ 

 $U_{\rm CNOT}$ 

Hadamard operators that the output state is

and the controlled NOT

shows

$$\frac{1}{2}(|00\rangle + |01\rangle - |10\rangle + |11\rangle)$$

**53.** 

Answer.

The system state will not change:

$$|\psi\rangle = (|00\rangle + |11\rangle)/\sqrt{2}$$

**54.** 

Answer.

The system state will not change:

$$|\psi\rangle = (|00\rangle + |11\rangle)/\sqrt{2}$$

**55.** 

$$\alpha\delta = \beta\gamma$$

Answer.

Proof.

$$|\beta_1\rangle |\beta_1\rangle$$

Let us write down Bell state

as a matrix notation:

$$|\beta_1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\0\\1\end{bmatrix},$$

$$|\beta_1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{vmatrix} 1\\0\\0\\1 \end{vmatrix},$$

$$|\beta_3\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle - |11\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{vmatrix} 1\\0\\0\\-1 \end{vmatrix},$$

$$|\beta_3\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle - |11\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{vmatrix} 1\\0\\0\\-1 \end{vmatrix},$$

You can see that all states are normalized:

$$\langle \beta_1 | \beta_1 \rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} [1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1] \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} (1^2 + 0^2 + 0^2 + 1^2) = 1,$$

analogous

$$\langle \beta_2 | \beta_2 \rangle = \langle \beta_3 | \beta_3 \rangle = \langle \beta_4 | \beta_4 \rangle = 1.$$

Let us check the orthogonality condition:

$$\forall i, j = 1, 2, 3, 4, i \neq j : \langle \beta_i | \beta_j \rangle = 0.$$

Direct calculation shows that

$$\langle \beta_1 | \beta_2 \rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} [1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1] \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = 0,$$

and further

$$\langle \beta_1 | \beta_2 \rangle = \langle \beta_1 | \beta_3 \rangle = \dots = \langle \beta_2 | \beta_1 \rangle = \dots = 0.$$

The system of vectors is orthogonal. Consequently, the Bell basis is an example of an orthonormalized basis.

**57.** 

Solution.

The student is wrong. His statement contradicts the theorem that it is impossible to copy an arbitrary state (see page 22). In fact the output of the quantum circuit will have the state

$$u|00\rangle + v|00\rangle \qquad U_{\text{CNOT}}$$

, which at does

not match the intended copy of

$$(u|0\rangle + v|0\rangle)(u|0\rangle + v|0\rangle)$$

**58.** 

Proof.

Let us prove this using the method "by contradiction". Suppose that

is not entangled, and prove that it leads to a contradiction.

In fact, with this assumption in mind, it is possible to record without restriction of the generality the following:

$$|GHZ\rangle = (a_1 |0\rangle + a_2 |1\rangle)(b_1 |00\rangle + b_2 |01\rangle + b_1 |10\rangle + b_2 |11\rangle),$$

$$a_1, a_2, b_1, \ldots, b_4$$

where are some complex numbers. Perform the multiplication operations and remove parentheses:

$$|GHZ\rangle = a_1b_1|000\rangle + a_1b_2|001\rangle + a_1b_3|010\rangle + a_1b_4|011\rangle + a_2b_1|100\rangle + a_2b_2|101\rangle + a_2b_3|110\rangle + a_2b_4|111\rangle.$$

Comparing the obtained sum with the expression

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|000\rangle + |111\rangle)$$

, we come to the system

of equations concerning the coefficients

$$a_1, a_2, b_1, \ldots, b_4$$

•

$$\begin{cases} a_1b_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \\ a_1b_2 = 0, \\ a_1b_3 = 0, \\ a_1b_4 = 0, \\ a_2b_1 = 0, \\ a_2b_2 = 0, \\ a_2b_3 = 0, \\ a_2b_4 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}. \end{cases}$$

As it is easy to see, this system is incompatible. Consider, for example, the first, fifth and eighth equations:

$$a_1b_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad a_2b_1 = 0, \quad a_2b_4 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

$$a_1b_1 \neq 0$$
  $a_1b_1 \neq 0$ 

, and

Since the product is

$$a_2 = 0$$

then

. This contradicts the equality

$$a_2b_4 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

Consequently, the system of equations concerning the coefficients

$$a_1, a_2, b_1, \ldots, b_4$$

has no solution. The state

$$|GHZ\rangle$$

is entangled.

## $|GHZ\rangle$

The entanglement of the state manifests itself in the fact that measuring any of the qubits will directly answer the question of what state all other qubits are in.

**59.** 

Solution.

# $|\mathrm{GHZ} angle$

The state

is entangled (see Exercise 58). As a first step in the

$$\ket{ ext{GHZ}}$$

procedure of building , we apply the Hadamard operation to the first qubit. After that he will change to the state

$$|\psi_1\rangle = (|0\rangle + |1\rangle)/\sqrt{2}$$

. Next, on the

second step of building the GHZ-state to the second and third qubits, we apply the CNOT

$$|\psi_1\rangle$$

operation controlled by the first qubit

Let us present the corresponding quantum circuit.

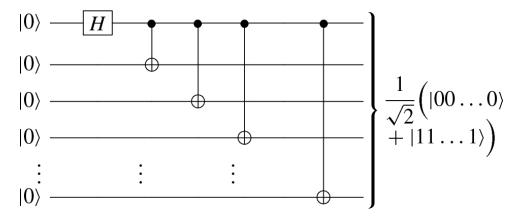
$$\begin{vmatrix}
|0\rangle & H \\
|0\rangle & |0\rangle
\end{vmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|000\rangle + |111\rangle)$$

As it is known, as a result of the CNOT operation, the controlling and controlled qubits are added to modulo two and the result is saved in the target qubit. Consequently, at the output of the quantum circuit, we obtain the state

$$|\text{GHZ}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|000\rangle + |111\rangle).$$

Answer.

Let us visualize the corresponding quantum circuit:



**62.** 

Solution.

$$|\psi
angle$$

Let us write the expansion

on a computational basis:

$$|\psi\rangle = a_0 |000\rangle + a_1 |001\rangle + a_2 |010\rangle + a_3 |011\rangle + a_4 |100\rangle + a_5 |101\rangle + a_6 |110\rangle + a_7 |111\rangle.$$

$$|0\rangle$$

The result of measuring the second qubit, equal to

, will be obtained with a

$$p = |a_0|^2 + |a_1|^2 + |a_4|^2 + |a_5|^2$$

probability

$$a_0 = 2/5$$
  $a_2 = 0$ 

Taking account of

$$a_2 = 0$$
  $a_0 = 2/5$ 

and , we obtair

$$p = (2/5)^2 + (2/5)^2 = 8/25$$

63.

$$|\psi_1\rangle |\psi_1\rangle |\psi_1\rangle$$

Answer. The entangled states are

64.

$$|\psi_1\rangle$$
  $|\psi_1\rangle$ 

Answer. The entangled state is

, the state

can be factored:

$$|\psi_2\rangle = \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle + |1\rangle)\right]\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-|0\rangle + |1\rangle)\right].$$

and therefore is not entangled.

**65.** 

Solution.

Zhegalkin polynomial has the following form

$$G(x_1, x_2) = g_0 \wedge 1 \oplus g_1 \wedge x_1 \oplus g_2 \wedge x_2 \oplus g_3 \wedge x_1 \wedge x_2,$$

$$g_0,\ldots,g_3\in\mathbb{B}$$

where

$$f(0,0) = 0$$

Using the conditions

Using the conditions 
$$f(0,0) = 0 \ f(0,0) = 0$$
 
$$f(0,0) = 0$$

$$f(0,0) = 0$$

, we will obtain a system of equations with respect

$$g_0,\ldots,g_3$$

to unknown coefficients

$$\begin{cases} g_0 = 0, \\ g_0 \oplus g_2 = 1, \\ g_0 \oplus g_1 = 0, \\ g_0 \oplus g_1 \oplus g_2 \oplus g_3 = 0. \end{cases}$$

$$a_2 = 0$$

The solution of this system are Boolean values

$$a_2 = 0$$
  $a_2 = 0$   $a_2 = 0$ 

, , . Finally, we

write down the ANF:

$$f(x_1, x_2) = x_2 \oplus x_1 x_2.$$

**66.** 

Answer.

$$g(x_1, x_2, x_3) = x_2 \oplus (x_1 \land x_3)$$

(1)

$$h(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = 1 \oplus x_1 \oplus x_3 \oplus (x_1 \land x_2 \land x_3)$$

**67.** 

Answer.

$$g(x_1, x_2, x_3) = 1 \oplus x_1 \oplus x_3 \oplus (x_1 \land x_2) \oplus (x_1 \land x_3)$$

(2) 
$$h(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = 1 \oplus (x_1 \wedge x_3) \oplus (x_1 \wedge x_4) \oplus (x_1 \wedge x_2 \wedge x_3) \oplus (x_1 \wedge x_2 \wedge x_4)$$

**68.** 

Answer.

$$f(x_1, x_2) = 1 \oplus x_1 \oplus x_2 \oplus x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1 x_3 \oplus x_2 x_3$$
(1)

$$g(x_1, x_2, x_3) = x_1 \oplus x_2 \oplus x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1 x_3 \oplus x_2 x_3$$
(2)

**69.** 

Answer.

$$f(x_1, x_2) = 1 \oplus x_1 \oplus x_1 x_2$$

(1)

$$f(x_1, x_2, x_3) = x_1 \oplus x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_3$$

- (3)  $f(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = 1 \oplus x_1 \oplus x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_4 \oplus x_3 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1$
- $(4) \quad f(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = x_1 \oplus x_3 \oplus x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_5 \oplus x_3 x_4 \oplus x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_4 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_3 x_5 \oplus x_1 x_2 x_5 \oplus x_1$

**70.** 

$$P(x) = 7 - x$$

Answer. , where

$$0 \le x \le 7$$

71.

Answer.

01234567

g(x) 0 0 0 0 1 1 3 7

72.

Solution.

Let us make a table of the values of the function f(x) (Table 10.1).

$$|x_1\rangle |x_1\rangle$$

and

To code the argument, we use three qubits

$$|x_1\rangle \quad f(7) = 81$$

. Since

$$2^6 < 81 < 2^7$$

, then seven qubits are required to code the

, and

$$|x_1\rangle |x_1\rangle$$

response: – .

(00000011)

The first bit of the response takes the values

$$q_1 = x_1 x_2$$

and is therefore implemented using the function

## (00000011)

The second bit,

, the function is

$$q_2 = x_1 \oplus x_1 x_2$$

(00000011)

The third bit,

, the function is

$$q_3 = x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1 x_3 \oplus x_2$$

(00000011)

The fourth bit,

, the function is

$$q_2 = x_1 \oplus x_1 x_2$$

(00000011)

The fifth bit,

, the function is

$$q_5 = 1 \oplus x_2 \oplus x_3 \oplus x_2 x_3$$

# (00000011)

The sixth bit, , the function is

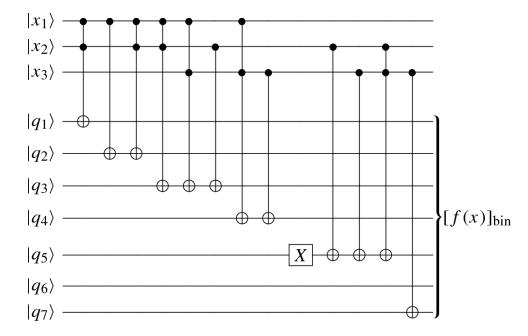
$$a_2 = 0$$

# (00000011)

The seventh bit, , the function is

$$q_7 = x_3$$

We obtain the following circuit:



This circuit implements the integer function

$$f:[0,7] \to [4,81]$$

, acting by the rule

$$f(x) = (x+2)^2$$

**73.** 

Solution.

For simplicity, we will number the planets of the Solar System from zero: Mercury—zeroth, Venus—first, etc., up to Neptune—seventh planet. This way of numbering allows only three qubits to be used to code the input data.

The data on the number of satellites s(n),

$$n = 0, 1, \dots, 7$$

, known at the moment of this section

preparation, are presented in Table <u>10.2</u>.

As you can see from Table  $\underline{10.2}$ , the function s(n) reaches its maximal value at

$$n = 5 \ s(5) = 82$$

. Consequently, seven qubits are

needed to code the response.

Let us make a table of values of the function s(n), in which we specify the binary

$$2 \times 2$$

representation of the argument

$$_{n}$$
  $2 \times 2$   $_{s(n)}$   $[s(n)]_{bin}$ 

0	0 0 0	0	0000000
1	0 0 1	0	0000000
2	0 1 0	1	0000001
3	0 1 1	2	0000010
4	100	79	1001111
5	101	82	1010010
6	110	27	0011011
7	111	14	0001110

 $q_{\text{ubits}} x_1 x_2 x_3 q_1 q_2 q_3 q_4 q_5 q_6 q_7$ 

**Table 10.1** 

Table of the values of the function

$$_{x}$$
  $2 \times 2$   $_{f(x)}$   $[f(x)]_{bin}$ 

0	0 0 0	4	0000100
1	0 0 1	9	0001001
2	0 1 0	16	0010000
3	0 1 1	25	0011001
4	100	36	0100100
5	101	49	0110001
6	1 1 0	64	1000000
7	111	81	1010001

 $q_{\text{ubits}} x_1 x_2 x_3 \quad q_1 q_2 q_3 q_4 q_5 q_6 q_7$ 

**Table 10.2** 

Number of satellites of Solar System planets

n 01234567

s(n) 0 0 1 2 79 82 27 14

## (00000011)

The first bit of the response

is implemented

$$q_2 = x_1 \oplus x_1 x_2$$

using the function

(00000011)

The second bit,

, function

$$a_2 = 0$$

(00000011)

The third bit,

, function

$$q_3 = x_1 x_2 \oplus x_1 x_3$$

(00000011)

The fourth bit,

, function

$$q_4 = x_1 x_2 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_3 \oplus x_1$$

## (00000011)

The fifth bit, , function

$$q_3 = x_1x_2 \oplus x_1x_3 \oplus x_2$$

(00000011)

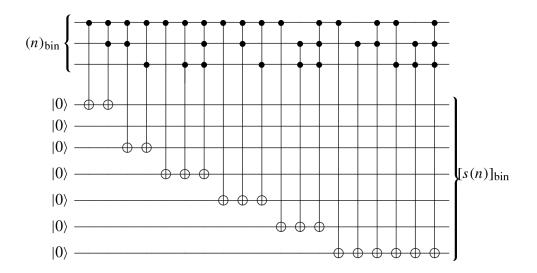
The sixth bit, function

$$q_4 = x_1 x_2 x_3 \oplus x_1 x_3 \oplus x_1$$

(00000011)

The seventh bit, , function 
$$q_7=x_1x_2x_3\oplus x_1x_2\oplus x_1x_3\oplus x_2x_3\oplus x_1\oplus x_2$$

We obtain the following circuit:



74.

Proof.

(a) According to the introduced definition,

$$\omega_k = (e^{2\pi i})^{k/N} = e^{2\pi i k/N}, \quad k = 0, 1, ..., N-1.$$

$$\omega_k = e^{2\pi i k/N}$$

The module of the complex number one for all values of the variable k and the argument is equal to

is equal to

$$arg \omega_k = 2\pi k/N$$

$$k = 0, 1, ..., N - 1$$

. It can, therefore, be

concluded that the roots of the *N*th degree of the one are on the unit circle *C*, where the first

$$\omega_0 \qquad k = 0 \qquad \omega_k$$

root is , corresponding

, lies on the real axis, and

are dividing the circle by *N* arcs of equal length (see the example for the special case

$$N = 9$$

in Fig. <u>10.1</u>).

## $U_{\rm CNOT}$

(b) Convert the representative form of recording the number

$$\omega_{k+N/2} = e^{\frac{2\pi i(k+N/2)}{N}} = e^{\frac{2\pi ik}{N}}e^{\pi i} = \omega_k e^{\pi i}.$$

$$VV^{\dagger} \equiv I$$

Using equality

, we obtain:

$$\omega_{k+N/2} = -\omega_k$$

for even N and

$$k = 0, 1, \dots, N/2 - 1$$

 $\omega_k$ 

(c) The values

form a geometric progression, the denominator of which is equal

$$\omega_1 = e^{2\pi i/N}$$

to progression, we obtain

. Using the formula for the sum of the geometric  $% \left( 1\right) =\left( 1\right) \left( 1\right)$ 

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega_k = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{2\pi i k/N} = \frac{(e^{2\pi i/N})^N - 1}{e^{2\pi i/N} - 1} = 0.$$

(d)
$$\prod_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega_k = \prod_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{2\pi \mathrm{i} k/N} = e^{\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} 2\pi \mathrm{i} k/N} = e^{(2\pi \mathrm{i} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} k)/N}.$$

The sum in the exponent indicator is equal to

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} k = \frac{N(N-1)}{2}$$

, which means that

$$\prod_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega_k = e^{\pi i(N-1)} = \cos \pi (N-1) + i \sin \pi (N-1) = (-1)^{N-1}.$$

**75.** 

Solution.

$$f(z) = z^N - 1$$

(a) Consider a polynomial

. Expansion of

$$(z-\omega_k)$$
  $\omega_k$ 

f(z) into multipliers of the kind , where are zeros of this polynomial or, in other words, roots of unity, leads to equality:

$$\prod_{k=0}^{N-1} (z - \omega_k) = z^N - 1.$$

$$\omega_k$$

(b) Writing down the roots of unity

$$\omega_k = e^{2\pi i k/N}$$

, rewrite the sum on the left side of the equality

as follows:

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} (\omega_k)^d = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{2\pi i k d/N}.$$

Next, let us consider two cases:

$$d = N$$

For the first case we will use the formula for the sum of geometric progression

$$1 + q + q^{2} + \dots + q^{N-1} = \frac{q^{N} - 1}{q - 1}$$

, where

$$q \neq 1$$

 $\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} (\omega_k)^d = \frac{e^{(2\pi i k d/N)N} - 1}{e^{2\pi i d/N} - 1} = 0.$ 

$$d = N$$

If , then all summands in the analyzed sum are equal to one. Finally, we obtain

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} (\omega_k)^d = \begin{cases} 0, & 1 \le d \le N-1; \\ N, & d = N. \end{cases}$$

**76.** 

Proof.

Prove, for example, the last of the equations given in the exercise:

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-2} \sum_{k'=1}^{N-1} \omega^{2k} = \sum_{k=0}^{N-2} (N-k-1)\omega^{2k}$$
$$= (N-1) \sum_{k=0}^{N-2} \omega^{2k} - \sum_{k=0}^{N-2} k\omega^{2k};$$

We use an auxiliary identity

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N} ka^{k} = a \frac{d}{dt} \frac{1 - a^{N+1}}{1 - a}$$

for the final

sum:

$$\sum_{k,k'=0}^{N-1} \frac{\omega_k \omega_{k'}}{\omega_{k'-k}} = (N-1) \frac{1 - \omega^{2(n-1)}}{1 - \omega^2}$$

$$k, k' = 0$$

$$k < k'$$

$$-\frac{\omega^2}{(1 - \omega^2)^2} \left( 1 + \frac{N-2}{\omega^2} - \frac{N-1}{\omega^4} \right) = \frac{N}{1 - \omega^2}.$$

The other points of the exercise are proved in the same way.

Droot

77.

Proof.

Using the definition of the classic discrete Fourier transform (8.4), we convert the value

$$|y_k|^2$$
  $k = 0, 1, ..., N-1$ 

$$|y_k|^2 = \left(\sum_{j_1=0}^{N-1} x_{j_1} e^{2\pi i j_1 k/N}\right) \left(\sum_{j_2=0}^{N-1} \overline{x}_{j_2} e^{-2\pi i j_2 k/N}\right)$$

$$= \sum_{j_1, j_2=0}^{N-1} x_{j_1} \overline{x}_{j_2} e^{2\pi i (j_1 - j_2) k/N}.$$

Next, let us calculate the sum on the right side of the formula, which is the content of the Parseval theorem ( $\frac{10.38}{}$ ):

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} |y_k|^2 = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \sum_{j_1, j_2=0}^{N-1} x_{j_1} \overline{x}_{j_2} e^{2\pi i (j_1 - j_2)k/N}$$

$$= \sum_{j_1, j_2=0}^{N-1} x_{j_1} \overline{x}_{j_2} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{2\pi i (j_1 - j_2)k/N}.$$

The internal sum is easily calculated (see formula (8.9)):

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{2\pi i(j_1-j_2)k/N} = N\delta_{j_1j_2},$$

$$\delta_{j_1j_2}$$

where

is the Kronecker symbol, which is defined on page 3. As a result, the

$$y_k$$

sum of squares of modules of

is equal to

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} |y_k|^2 = N \sum_{j_1, j_2=0}^{N-1} \delta_{j_1 j_2} x_{j_1} \overline{x}_{j_2} = N \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} |x_k|^2.$$

The Parseval theorem is proved.

**78.** 

Answer.

$$\mathcal{F}[\mathbf{x}] = (2, 0, -2, 0)$$

(1)

$$\mathcal{F}[\mathbf{x}] = (2, 0, 2, 0)$$

(2)

**79.** 

Solution.

According to the definition of the DFT

$$(\mathcal{F}[\mathbf{x}])_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{\frac{2\pi i}{N}kn} C(N-1,n) \text{ for } 0 \le n \le N-1.$$

$$\mathcal{F}[\mathbf{x}]$$

The resulting ratio for *n* vector component Newton binomial formula:

can be converted using

$$(\mathcal{F}[\mathbf{x}])_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} C(N-1,k) \left(e^{\frac{2\pi i n}{N}}\right)^k = \left(1 + e^{\frac{2\pi i n}{N}}\right)^{N-1} = (1 + \omega^n)^{N-1}.$$

$$n = 0, 1, ..., N - 1$$

for all

**80.** 

Answer.

(1)

$$(\mathcal{F}[\mathbf{x}])_n = \begin{cases} \frac{N}{2}, & \text{if } n = 0; \\ -\frac{1 - (-1)^n}{1 - \omega^n}, & \text{if } n = 1, 2, \dots, N - 1; \end{cases}$$

$$(\mathcal{F}[\mathbf{x}])_n = \begin{cases} \frac{N}{2}, & \text{if } n = 0; \\ \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{1 - \omega^n}, & \text{if } n = 1, 2, \dots, N - 1. \end{cases}$$

**82.** 

Solution.

The problem can be solved by several methods.

First method

Let us use the definition of a quantum discrete Fourier transform (8.15):

$$|00\ldots 0\rangle \to \mathcal{F}[|00\ldots 0\rangle] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum_{k=0}^{2^{n-1}} e^{2\pi i jk/2^n} |k\rangle.$$

$$|00\dots0\rangle$$

The state

in a computational basis has the sequence number

$$j = 0$$

, therefore for all

$$k = 0, 1, \dots, 2^n - 1$$

is valid the equality

$$e^{2\pi i jk/2^n} = 1$$

. Therefore

$$\mathcal{F}[|00\dots0\rangle] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum_{k=0}^{2^n-1} |k\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} (|0\rangle + |1\rangle + \dots + |2^n-1\rangle).$$

Second method

Using the matrix representation of the quantum discrete Fourier transform (8.17), we obtain

$$|00\dots0\rangle \to \mathcal{F}[|00\dots0\rangle]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2^{n/2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 1 & \omega_n & \omega_n^2 & \dots & \omega_n^{N-1} \\ 1 & \omega_n^2 & \omega_n^4 & \dots & \omega_n^{2(N-1)} \\ 1 & \omega_n^3 & \omega_n^6 & \dots & \omega_n^{3(N-1)} \\ & & \dots & & \dots \\ 1 & \omega_n^{N-1} & \omega_n^{2(N-1)} & \dots & \omega_n^{(N-1)(N-1)} \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \dots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$=\frac{1}{2^{n/2}}\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\\1\\1\\\vdots\\1\end{bmatrix}.$$

Such a vector corresponds to the state

$$\mathcal{F}[|00\dots0\rangle] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}}(|0\rangle + |1\rangle + \dots + |2^n - 1\rangle).$$

Third method

For calculations, we will use the formula (8.21). Since

$$|\psi_{\text{out}}\rangle = u |01\rangle + v |10\rangle$$

, all multipliers

$$e^{2\pi i(0.j_nj_{n-1}...)}$$

of the form are converted to one

$$\mathcal{F}[|00\dots0\rangle] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}}(|0\rangle + |1\rangle)(|0\rangle + |1\rangle)\dots(|0\rangle + |1\rangle).$$

By removing parentheses, we obtain the final answer

$$\mathcal{F}[|00\dots0\rangle] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}}(|00\dots1\rangle + |00\dots1\rangle + \dots + |11\dots1\rangle)$$
$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}}(|0\rangle + |1\rangle + \dots + |2^n - 1\rangle).$$

**83.** 

Answer. \$\infty\text{mathcal \{F}[\left| \\psi \\right\rangle ]=\left| \{0\\right\rangle \\$\$.

84.

 $$$\mathbf{F}[\left { \right } \right ]=\left 1 {1}{\left . \right }$ 

**85.** 

Note.

86.

Solution.

The execution time of the classic Fast Fourier Transform algorithm is determined by an asymptotic ratio  $$\$T_{\text{cl.}}=\tau {cl.}}\$  where N is the size of the input vector, and  $$\$\$  is the duration of one elementary operation of the algorithm.

The Quantum Fourier Transform algorithm is based on a circuit that contains \$\$\$\Theta \left( (\log \_2 N)^2\right) \$\$ elementary gates. Assuming that the execution time of a single gate is a constant value \$\$\$\tau \_{\text {quant.}} = \Theta (1)\$\$, we obtain a quantum algorithm speedup \$\$\$S=\dfrac{T\_{\text {cl.}}}{T\_{\text {quant.}}}\$\$\$ comparing to the classic case: \$\$\begin{aligned} S =\dfrac{\tau \_{\text {cl.}}}\Theta (N\log \_2 N)}{\tau \_{\text {cl.}}}\Theta \left( (\log \_2 N)^2\right) } = \Theta \left( \dfrac{N}{\log}

\_2 N\\right) . \end{aligned}\$\$

**87.** 

Solution.

```
The asymptotic complexity of the parallel version of the Fast Fourier Transform algorithm presented on page 47, is equal to $$\Theta (\sqrt{N}\log _2 N)$$. By performing calculations similar to the solution in the previous exercise, we obtain the speedup S achieved by the quantum algorithm of the Fourier transform compared to the parallel algorithm of the Fast Fourier transform:
```

../images/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Fig1\_HTML.png Fig. 10.1

To Exercise  $\frac{74}{2}$ . Location of the roots of the *N*th degree on the unit circle for  $\frac{8}{2}$ \$N=9\$\$

#### References

1. 1.

Greenberger DM, Horne M, Zeilinger A (1989) Going beyond Bell's theorem. In Kafatos M (ed) Bell's theorem, quantum theory and conceptions of the universe. Fundamental theories of physics, vol 37. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 69–72

2. 2.

Gamelin TW (2001) Complex analysis (Series: Undergraduate texts in mathematics). Springer, 478 p

3. 3.

Jozsa R (1994) Fidelity for mixed quantum states. J Modern Opt 41(12):2315–2323

4. 4.

Liang YC, Yeh Yu-H, Mendonça PEMF, Teh RY, Reid MD, Drummond PD (2019) Quantum fidelity measures for mixed states. Rep Prog Phys 82(2):07600

#### **Footnotes**

1

Lov Kumar Grover (born 1961).

2

Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (1646–1716).

3

Karl Hermann Amandus Schwarz (1843–1921).

4

Augustin-Louis Cauchy (1789–1857).

```
5
```

Victor Yakovlevich Bunyakovsky (1804–1889).

#### <u>6</u>

Pythagoras of Samos (Pythagoras of Samos, .../images/505754\_1\_En\_10\_Chapter/505754\_1\_En\_10\_IEq127\_HTML.gif) (ca. 570 B.C.—ca. 495 B.C.).

#### 7

Quantum state is named after the first letters of the names of physicists Daniel M. Greenberger (born 1932), Michael A. Horne and Anton Zeilinger (born 1945).

#### 8

Parseval (Marc-Antoine Parseval des Chênes) (1755–1836).

#### 9

Brook Taylor (1685–1731).

## Appendix A

## The Postulates of Quantum Theory

Quantum theory is a theory that establishes the way of describing laws of motion of physical systems, for which the values characterizing the system and having the dimension of the action are comparable to the Planck<sup>1</sup> constant, or, as they say, the **quantum of action** 

$$h = 6.626... \times 10^{-34} \text{ J} \cdot \text{sec.}$$
 (A.1)

In particular, quantum theory describes the processes taking place in *microworld*, to which objects belong *structural elements of matter* :

- atoms,
- molecules,
- primitive crystal cells,
- atomic nuclei, and
- elementary particles.

These elements of the microworld are characterized by very peculiar laws of motion. These laws differ significantly from the laws of classical mechanics, describing mechanical motion in classical physics. A number of effects (superconductivity, superfluidity, ferromagnetism) as well as physicochemical properties of matter can only be quantitatively explained within the framework of quantum theory .

Let us present the main provisions of quantum theory as a set of postulates (see Fig. A.1).

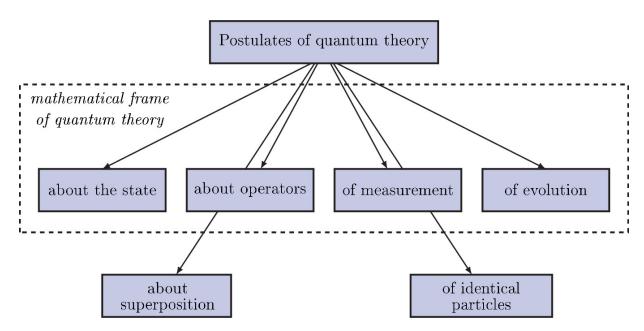


Fig. A.1 Quantum theory postulates system

**Postulate about the state**. The state of the quantum system is fully specified by the state vector, which has the properties of uniqueness (with the accuracy to an arbitrary phase) and normality.

**Postulate about operators of physical quantities**. Each physical quantity corresponds to a linear Hermitian operator, in which eigenvalues are possible values of the physical quantity, and its eigenvectors are states corresponding to the indicated eigenvalue.

**Postulate of measurement**. In the decomposition of an arbitrary vector  $|\psi\rangle$  by the orthonormalized system of eigenvectors  $|\psi_k\rangle$  of physical quantity F:

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{k} a_k |\psi_k\rangle \tag{A.2}$$

the values  $|a_k|^2$  are equal to the probabilities of finding the system in states  $|\psi_k\rangle$ , i.e., to the probabilities that when measuring F its value will be the kth eigenvalue.

The postulate of measurement is also referred as the **Born** <sup>2</sup> **rule** .

**Postulate of evolution**. The evolution of the state vector is described by the Schrödinger <sup>3</sup> time-dependent equation :

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\psi\rangle = \mathcal{H} |\psi\rangle,$$
 (A.3)

where  $\mathcal{H}$  is the Hamiltonian<sup>4</sup> operator of quantum system,  $\hbar=h/2\pi$  is a fundamental physical constant, which is called, as well as (A.1), the Planck constant.

The above postulates determine the mathematical apparatus of quantum theory. Two other statements are used to fill it with physical content: the principle of superposition of states and the postulate of identical particles (see Fig. A.1) [1-3].

**Superposition of state postulate**. If a quantum system can be in the states  $|\psi_1\rangle$ ,  $|\psi_1\rangle$ , ...,  $|\psi_1\rangle$ , in which the physical value F takes values  $f_1$ ,  $f_1$ , ...,  $f_1$ , respectively, the system can be in the state  $|\Psi\rangle$ , which is a linear superposition of states  $|\psi_k\rangle$ :

$$|\Psi\rangle = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k |\psi_k\rangle. \tag{A.4}$$

**Postulate of identical particles**. Particles with integer spin are described by symmetrical wave functions (are bosons<sup>5</sup>), particles with a half-integer spin are described by symmetric wave functions (are fermions<sup>6</sup>).

Apparently, all particles occurring in nature belong either to the class of fermions or to the class of bosons.

## **Appendix B**

## **Complex Matrices**

In quantum theory and its applications among matrices with complex coefficients, the classes of Hermitian and unitary matrices play a special role. Hermitian matrices correspond to the operators of observed physical quantities. In its turn, unitary matrices correspond to linear transformations

preserving vector lengths and, consequently, the normalization of wave functions [2].

#### **B.1 Hermitian Matrices**

Consider a matrix Z of size  $m \times n$ , containing complex elements  $Z = (z_{ij})$ ,

where n = 0, 1, ..., 7, j = 1, 2, ..., n. **Hermitian conjugate** matrix with reference to Z is called matrix  $Z^{\dagger}$ , which elements are equal to

$$z_{ij}^{\dagger} = z_{ji}^*. \tag{B.1}$$

In order to obtain a Hermitian conjugate matrix, transpose and complex conjugation operations are applied to *Z*. These operations are independent and can be performed in any order.

**Example B.1** Hermitian conjugate matrix of 
$$Z = \begin{bmatrix} 1+i & 2+3i \\ -1 & 5-4i \end{bmatrix}$$
 is the

matrix

$$Z^{\dagger} = \left( \begin{bmatrix} 1+i & 2+3i \\ -1 & 5-4i \end{bmatrix}^{T} \right)^{*} = \left( \begin{bmatrix} 1+i & -1 \\ 2+3i & 5-4i \end{bmatrix} \right)^{*} = \begin{bmatrix} 1-i & -1 \\ 2-3i & 5+4i \end{bmatrix}.$$
 (B.2)

*Note.* Sometimes for the notation of the Hermitian conjugate matrix is used  $Z^+$  or  $Z^H$ .

Let us list the main properties of a Hermitian conjugate operation:

- (1)  $I^{\dagger} = I$ ;
- (2)  $(Z_1 + Z_2)^{\dagger} = Z_1^{\dagger} + Z_2^{\dagger};$
- (3)  $(\lambda Z)^{\dagger} = \lambda^* Z^{\dagger} \quad \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{C};$
- (4)  $(Z^{\dagger})^{\dagger} = Z;$
- (5) if there exists  $A^{-1}$ , then  $(A^{-1})^{\dagger} = (A^{\dagger})^{-1}$ ;

(6) 
$$\det A^{\dagger} = \det A^* = (\det A)^* \cdot$$

**Theorem B.1** If for complex matrices  $Z_1$  and  $Z_1$  the product  $Z_1Z_2$  is defined, then

$$(Z_1 Z_2)^{\dagger} = Z_2^{\dagger} Z_1^{\dagger}.$$
 (B.3)

Proof.

The validity of the theorem follows from the property of transposition of the matrix product:

$$(Z_1 Z_2)^T = Z_2^T Z_1^T. (B.4)$$

With the help of Eq. (B.4), we obtain a chain of equations

$$(Z_1Z_2)^{\dagger} = ((Z_1Z_2)^T)^* = (Z_2^TZ_1^T)^* = (Z_2^T)^*(Z_1^T)^* = Z_2^{\dagger}Z_1^{\dagger},$$
 (B.5)

which proves the identity (B.3).

Among complex matrices, Hermitian matrices are very widely used. **Hermitian** matrix is a square matrix with  $Z^{\dagger} = Z$ . The corresponding condition for the elements of such a matrix is  $\forall i, j \ (z_{ij} = z_{ji}^*)$ . In other words, the Hermitian matrix coincides with its Hermitian conjugate one [4].

**Example B.2** Matrix 
$$Z = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 - i \\ -3 + i & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$
 is as easy to see, Hermitian.

Let us check it out.

$$Z^{\dagger} = \left( \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 - i \\ -3 + i & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{T} \right)^{*}$$

$$= \left( \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 + i \\ -3 - i & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right)^{*} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 - i \\ -3 + i & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$
(B.6)

It should be reminded that the application of the complex conjugation operation to the real number leaves this number unchanged.  $\Box$ 

**Example B.3** Gell-Mann <sup>7</sup> matrices  $\lambda_k$ , where k = 1, 2, ..., 8,

$$\lambda_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \lambda_{2} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -i & 0 \\ i & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \lambda_{3} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\lambda_{4} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \lambda_{5} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -i \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ i & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \lambda_{6} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (B.7)$$

$$\lambda_{7} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -i \\ 0 & i & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \lambda_{8} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix},$$

are for all k, as it is easy to notice, Hermitian. Gell-Mann matrices are a generalization of Pauli matrices to describe the quark model of strongly interacting particles .

The set  $\Lambda = \{I, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_8\}$  forms the basis in the vector space of complex matrices of size  $2 \times 2$ . In fact, an arbitrary matrix

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & m_{13} \\ m_{21} & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ m_{31} & m_{32} & m_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

can be represented as a linear combination of

$$M = a_0 I + \sum_{i=1}^{8} a_i \lambda_i, \tag{B.8}$$

where  $a_{0-8} \in \mathbb{C}$  are some complex numbers. Using a method similar to the one presented in the solution of the Exercise 10, we obtain a vector of expansion coefficients:

$$(a_0, a_1, \dots, a_8)$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{3}(m_{11} + m_{22} + m_{33}), \frac{1}{2}(m_{12} + m_{21}), \frac{i}{2}(m_{12} - m_{21}), \frac{1}{2}(m_{11} - m_{22}), \frac{1}{2}(m_{13} + m_{31}), \frac{i}{2}(m_{13} - m_{31}), \frac{1}{2}(m_{23} + m_{32}), \frac{i}{2}(m_{23} - m_{32}), \frac{\sqrt{3}}{6}(m_{11} + m_{22} - 2m_{33})\right).$$

The set  $\Lambda = \{I, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_8\}$  is called **Gell-Mann basis** of vector space of complex matrices of the second order.

**Example B.4** Show that if  $Z_1$  and  $Z_1$  are complex matrices of the same order, the matrix  $\frac{1}{2}(Z_1Z_2 + Z_2Z_1)$  is Hermitian.

Proof.

Let us introduce the notation  $W = \frac{1}{2}(Z_1Z_2 + Z_2Z_1)$  and find Hermitian

conjugate matrix with reference to *W*:

$$W^{\dagger} = \left(\frac{1}{2}(Z_1 Z_2 + Z_2 Z_1)\right)^{\dagger} = \frac{1}{2}((Z_1 Z_2)^{\dagger} + (Z_2 Z_1)^{\dagger})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(Z_2 Z_1 + Z_1 Z_2) = W.$$
(B.9)

Thus, it is proved that W is Hermitian matrix.  $\square$ 

*Note*. Hermitian matrices are also called **self-conjugated** matrices. The theory of self-conjugated matrices is widely used in modern physics [2].

#### **B.2 Unitary Matrices**

A square matrix U with complex elements is called **unitary**, if the condition  $U^\dagger U = I$  is fulfilled. The unitarity condition can be written in

other equivalent forms as follows:

$$UU^{\dagger} = I$$
 or  $U^{\dagger} = U^{-1}$ . (B.10)

**Example B.5** Let us prove that matrix  $Z = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -i & i \end{bmatrix}$  is a unitary one.

To do this, let us calculate the product  $Z^{\dagger}Z$ :

$$Z^{\dagger}Z = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -i & i \end{bmatrix} \end{pmatrix}^{\dagger} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -i & i \end{bmatrix}$$
$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i \\ 1 & -i \end{bmatrix} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -i & i \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{B.11}$$

Therefore, Z is unitary matrix.  $\square$ 

**Theorem B.2** The unitary matrix determinant is a complex number, the modulus of which is equal to one.

Proof.

Let U is an arbitrary unitary matrix. Using the property (6) of Hermitian conjugation on page 110, we present the modulus of determinant U as follows:

$$|\det U| = \sqrt{(\det U)(\det U)^*} = \sqrt{(\det U)(\det U^{\dagger})}.$$
 (B.12)

Since the product of matrix determinants is equal to the determinant of their product,  $\forall A, B \ (\det A \times \det B = \det(AB))$ , then

$$|\det U| = \sqrt{\det(UU^{\dagger})} = \sqrt{\det I} = 1.$$
 (B.13)

Thus, the unitary matrix determinant modulus is equal to one. The theorem B.2 about unitary matrix determinant is proved.

There is a close connection between unitary and Hermitian matrices: each unitary matrix A is represented as  $A = \exp(iB)$ , where B is a

Hermitian matrix [5].

**Example B.6** What condition must the complex numbers  $\lambda_k$  and  $\lambda_k$  and the real number  $\varphi$  satisfy

$$\begin{bmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ -e^{i\varphi}u_2^* & e^{i\varphi}u_1^* \end{bmatrix}$$
 (B.14)

for the matrix to be unitary?

Solution.

Let us check the unitarity condition  $U^{\dagger}U=I$  by direct calculation of the product of the source matrix and the Hermitian conjugated to it.

$$\begin{bmatrix} u_{1} & u_{2} \\ -e^{i\varphi}u_{2}^{*} & e^{i\varphi}u_{1}^{*} \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} u_{1} & u_{2} \\ -e^{i\varphi}u_{2}^{*} & e^{i\varphi}u_{1}^{*} \end{bmatrix}^{\dagger}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} u_{1} & u_{2} \\ -e^{i\varphi}u_{2}^{*} & e^{i\varphi}u_{1}^{*} \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} u_{1}^{*} & -e^{-i\varphi}u_{2} \\ u_{2}^{*} & e^{-i\varphi}u_{1} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} |u_{1}|^{2} + |u_{2}|^{2} & 0 \\ 0 & |u_{1}|^{2} + |u_{2}|^{2} \end{bmatrix}.$$
(B.15)

It follows that in order to fulfill the unitarity property, a necessary and sufficient condition is the fulfillment of the equality  $|u_1|^2 + |u_2|^2 = 1$ . In

this connection, the parameter  $\varphi \in \mathbb{R}$  can take arbitrary values.  $\square$ 

**Theorem B.3** Eigenvalues of the Hermitian operator are real.

Proof.

Let A is an arbitrary Hermitian matrix of size  $2 \times 2$ , with its eigenvector  $\boldsymbol{b}$ , which corresponds to its eigenvalue  $\lambda_0$ . This means that the equality is fulfilled

$$A\boldsymbol{b} = \lambda_0 \boldsymbol{b}. \tag{B.16}$$

Consider the expression  $b^{\dagger}Ab$ . It is equal to the real number, i.e., according to the theorem of the Hermitian conjugation of the product on the page 104

$$(\boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}A\boldsymbol{b})^{\dagger} = \boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}A^{\dagger}(\boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger})^{\dagger} = \boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}A\boldsymbol{b}. \tag{B.17}$$

According to the (B.16), the following equality is fulfilled

$$\boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger} A \boldsymbol{b} = \lambda_0 \boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{b} = \lambda_0 (|b_1|^2 + |b_2|^2 + \dots + |b_n|^2),$$
 (B.18)

where  $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n$  are components of the vector  $\boldsymbol{b}$ .

Comparing (B.17) and (B.18), we obtain that  $\lambda_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Theorem B.3 about eigenvalues of the Hermitian operator is proved.

**Theorem B.4** All eigenvalues of the unitary matrix lie in the complex plane on a unit circle with the center at the origin of the coordinate system.

Proof.

Let U is an arbitrary unitary matrix with an eigenvector  $\boldsymbol{b}$ , which corresponds to its eigenvalue  $\lambda_0$ . This means that the following equality is fulfilled:

$$U\boldsymbol{b} = \lambda_0 \boldsymbol{b}. \tag{B.19}$$

Consider the expression  $(Ub)^{\dagger}(Ub)$ . By virtue of the fact that (B.19), this expression can be represented as follows:

$$(U\boldsymbol{b})^{\dagger}(U\boldsymbol{b}) = (\lambda_0\boldsymbol{b})^{\dagger}(\lambda_0\boldsymbol{b}) = (\lambda_0^*\boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger})(\lambda_0\boldsymbol{b}) = \lambda_0^*\lambda_0\boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}\boldsymbol{b} = |\lambda_0|^2\boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}\boldsymbol{b}. \text{ (B.20)}$$

It should be noted that the property (3) of the Hermitian conjugation operation was used in the conversions (see page 110).

On the other hand, based on the theorem about the Hermitian conjugation of the product on page 110 and on the unitarity property  $U^{\dagger}U=I$ , we obtain

$$(U\boldsymbol{b})^{\dagger}(U\boldsymbol{b}) = (\boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}U^{\dagger})(U\boldsymbol{b}) = \boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}(U^{\dagger}U)\boldsymbol{b} = \boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}I\boldsymbol{b} = \boldsymbol{b}^{\dagger}\boldsymbol{b}.$$

Comparing (B.20) and (B.21), we come to the conclusion:  $|\lambda_0|^2 = 1$ .

Therefore, the complex number  $\lambda_0$  is located on the complex plane at a distance  $\rho=1$  from the origin of coordinates. The locus of all such points  $\lambda_0$  is a circle of unit radius with the center at the origin of coordinates, which was to be proved.

Theorem B.4 about eigenvalues of the unitary operator is proved.

**Example B.7** Let us calculate eigenvalues and eigenvectors of Pauli matrices  $|0\rangle$ ,  $|0\rangle$ ,  $|0\rangle$  (see the definition on the page 7).

Solution.

Let us determine the eigenvalues of the matrix  $\sigma_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ . For this

purpose, we solve the characteristic equation

$$\begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0. \tag{B.22}$$

Expanding the determinant of the second order, we obtain the equation  $(-\lambda)^2 - 1 = 0$ . The equation with respect to the variable  $\lambda$  has two roots  $\lambda_1 = 1$  and  $\lambda_2 = -1$ , and these numbers are eigenvalues of Pauli matrix  $|0\rangle$ .

Each of its eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$ , where i=1,2, corresponds to eigenvector  $\boldsymbol{b}_i$ . First let us calculate  $\boldsymbol{b}_1$  for  $\lambda_1=1$ . Denote the unknown complex components of this vector:

\$\$\varvec{b}\_1 = \begin{bmatrix} z\_1 \\ z\_2 \end{bmatrix} \$\$.

According to the definition of the matrix eigenvector, \$\$z\_1\$\$ and
\$\$z\_2\$\$ values satisfy the system of linear equations

```
\gg $$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & amp;{} 1 \\ 1 & amp;{} -1
   \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \ z_2 \ bmatrix} = 0.
                        \end{aligned}$$
The resulting system contains two equations
    \boldsymbol{\alpha}
                                                                 (B.24)
  \phi = {-}z_1 - z_2 = 0. \end{array}\right. \end{aligned}
which differ only in sign. Consequently, the condition
                                                        $$z 1=z 2$$ is
fulfilled, and the vector
                           $$\varvec{b} 1$$ can be represented as
follows:
    \ \begin{aligned} \varvec{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_1
                                                                 (B.25)
    \end{bmatrix} = z_1 \end{bmatrix} 1 \label{eq:bmatrix},
                        \end{aligned}$$
where 🔀
           $$z_1\in \mathbb {C}$$. Quantum mechanics usually uses
normalized vectors, so let us impose an additional condition of
normalization:
                                                                (B.26)
     \$$\begin{aligned} |z_1|^2+|z_1|^2 = 1. \end{aligned}$$
For simplicity, let us select one of the real roots of Eq. (B.26)
$z_1 = 1/\sqrt{2}, which results in
     \ \varvec{b}_1 = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1
\end{bmatrix}$$
   Next, the eigenvector which corresponds to 🔀
                                                 $$\lambda 2=-1$$ is
equal to
     \ \varvec{b}_2 = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1
\end{bmatrix}$$
, as it can be easily shown by similar calculations.
   Let us formulate a final answer:
   for 📄
            $$\sigma _1$$: 📄
                                $$\lambda _{1,2}=\pm 1$$,
eigenvectors are
     \ \varvec{b}_{1,2} = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ \pm
1 \end{bmatrix} $$
   for 📄
            $$\sigma _2$$: 📄
                                $$\lambda _{1,2}=\pm 1$$,
eigenvectors are
```

```
$$ \varvec{b}_{1,2} = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ \pm \\mathrm {i}\end{bmatrix} $$
;
    for $$\sigma_3$$: $$$\lambda_{1,2}=\pm 1$$,
eigenvectors are

$$ \varvec{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} $$$ and

$$ \varvec{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} $$$.

$$$\square $$$
```

### References

- 1. Dirac PAM (1967) The principles of quantum mechanics, 4th edn. (Series: The international series of monographs on physics, 27). Oxford University Press, 314 p
- 2. Landau LD, Lifshitz EM (1989) Quantum mechanics: non-relativistic theory. Course of theoretical physics, vol 3, 3rd edn. Pergamon Press, Oxford
- 3. von Neumann J (2018) Mathematical foundations of quantum mechanics. Princeton University Press, 304 p
- 4. Kurgalin S, Borzunov S (2021) Algebra and geometry with python. Springer, Cham. xvi, 425 p
- 5. Gantmacher FR (2001) The theory of matrices, vol 1. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, x, 374 p

### **Name Index**

#### $\mathbf{B}$

Bell

Boole

Born

Bose

Bunyakovsky

 $\mathbf{C}$ 

Cauchy

 $\mathbf{D}$ 

Dirac

#### $\mathbf{E}$

Einstein

Euler

#### $\mathbf{F}$

Fermi

Fourier

Fredkin

#### G

Gell-Mann

Greenberger

Grover

#### Η

Hadamard

Hamilton

Heisenberg

Hermite

Hilbert

Horne

#### J

Jacobi

#### K

Kronecker

#### $\mathbf{L}$

Leibniz

### M

Muller

#### P

Parseval

Pauli

Planck

Podolsky

#### **Pythagoras**

#### R

Reed

Rosen

#### S

Schrödinger

Schwarz

Sheffer

#### $\mathbf{T}$

**Taylor** 

Toffoli

#### Z

Zeilinger

Zhegalkin

### **Index**

#### A

```
Action of a system
```

Addition modulo two

Algebraic normal form

methods of constructing

method of equivalent transformations method of undetermined coefficients

Algorithm

binary search

Fast Fourier Transform

Grover's

interpolation search

of solving systems of linear algebraic equations

phase estimation

sequential search

ANF, see algebraic normal form

```
Anticommutator
Atom
Atomic nucleus
B
Basis states
Bell basis
Bell state
Bit
Block matrix
Boolean algebra
Boolean expression
Boolean function
          of $\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sq}}}}}}}}}} \end{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sq}}}}}}}}}}}}} \end{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sq}}}}}}}}}}}}}}} \end{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sq}}}}}}}}}} \end{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sq}}}}}}}}} \end{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sqrt{\sq}}}}}}}}}}}
          of two arguments
Boolean tuple, see Boolean vector
Boolean variable
Boolean vector
Born rule
Bosons
Bra vector
\mathbf{C}
Cauchy–Bunyakovsky–Schwarz inequality, see Schwarz inequality
CCNOT, see gate, CCNOT
Circuit
          acyclic
Classical communication channel
Class of functions
          $$O(g(n)) $$
          $$\Theta (g(n)) $$
CNOT, see gate, CNOT
Commutative matrices
Commutator
Complex matrix, see matrix, complex
Components of a vector
Computational basis
Computational basis states, see basis states
```

Conjunction

Continuous Fourier Transform, see Fourier transform, continuous

Controlled NOT, see gate, CNOT

Controlled phase gate

Coordinates of a vector, see components of a vector

Cryptography

CSWAP, see gate, CSWAP

#### D

Degree of a function

DFT, see Discrete Fourier Transform

Dirac matrices

Dirac notation

Discrete Fourier Transform

inverse

Disjunction

Disjunctive normal form

DNF, see disjunctive normal form

Dot product, see scalar product

#### $\mathbf{E}$

Eigenvalues of an operator

Electron

Elementary conjunction

monotone

Elementary particles

relativistic

Entangled state, see state, entangled

**EPR** experiment

EPR pair

Euler formula

Evolution of the quantum system

#### F

Fast Fourier Transform

parallel implementation

**Fermions** 

Ferromagnetism

```
FFT, see Fast Fourier Transform
Fidelity of two states
Fourier transform
  continuous
  discrete
  inverse
Fredkin gate, see gate, Fredkin
G
Gate
  CCNOT
  CNOT
  CSWAP
  Fredkin
  Hadamard
  NOT
  one-qubit
  phase
  $$\pi /8 $$
  Toffoli
  two-qubit
Gell-Mann basis
Gell-Mann matrices
GHZ-state
Graviton
Grover's algorithm, see algorithm, Grover's
H
Hadamard gate, see gate, Hadamard
Hamiltonian operator
Heisenberg principle, see uncertainty principle
Hermitian conjugate matrix, see matrix, Hermitian conjugate
Hermitian matrix, see matrix, Hermitian
Hilbert space
I
Identity matrix
Image
```

```
Imaginary unit
Implication
Information theory
Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform, see Discrete Fourier Transform, inverse
J
Jacobi identity
K
Ket vector
Kronecker symbol
L
Laws of motion
  in classical mechanics
  in quantum mechanics
Leibniz identity
Linear algebra
Linear combination of basis states
Logical equivalence
M
Matrix
  complex
  Hermitian
  Hermitian conjugate
  identity
  of quantum inversion
  rectangular
  self-conjugated, see matrix, Hermitian
  unitary
Matrix representation
  of operators
  of vectors
Measurement of a state
Minterm, see elementary conjunction
Molecular cluster
Molecule
```

#### N

**NAND** 

Negation

Network, see circuit

Neutrino

No-cloning theorem

Nonlocality

Normalization condition

NOT, see gate, NOT

#### 0

Operator

Oracle

Orthonormal system of vectors

#### P

Parseval theorem

Pauli matrices

Peirce's arrow

Phase estimation algorithm, see algorithm, phase estimation

Phase gate,, see gate, phase

Photon

Planck constant, see quantum of action

Positive polarity Reed–Muller expansion

Primitive crystal cell

Principle of causality

Product of operators

Projection on the state of computational basis

Projection operator

Proton

Pythagoras theorem

#### Q

Quantum bit, see qubit

Quantum circuit, see circuit

Quantum computer

Quantum Discrete Fourier Transform, *see* Quantum Fourier Transform, discrete

```
Quantum Fourier Transform
  discrete
Quantum logic gate, see gate
Quantum-mechanical operator
Quantum of action
Quantum search algorithm, see algorithm, Grover's
Quantum teleportation
Quantum theory
Quark model
Qubit
  control
  controlled, see qubit, target
  target
R
Rank of an elementary conjunction
Reed-Muller basis
Reed–Muller expansion
Register
Root of unity
S
Sample
Scalar product
  properties
    anti-linearity with respect to the first argument
    conjugate symmetry
    non-negativity
Schrödinger time-dependent equation
Schwarz inequality
Self-conjugated matrix, see matrix, Hermitian
Sequential search algorithm, see algorithm, sequential search
Sheffer stroke
Signal
Signal spectrum
Speedup of a quantum algorithm
Spin of an elementary particle
  half-integer
```

integer
Square root of inversion
State of a quantum system
Structural elements of matter
Superconductivity
Superfluidity

T
Target

Target
Tensor product
Theorem
no-cloning, see no-cloning theorem
of universal set of elements
Parseval, see Parseval theorem
Pythagoras, see Pythagoras theorem
Toffoli gate, see gate, Toffoli
Transformation phase
Truth table

#### U

Uncertainty principle Unitary matrix, *see* matrix, unitary Universal for classical calculations set

#### $\mathbf{V}$

Vector
bra, *see* bra vector
dual
Hermitian conjugate
ket, *see* ket vector

#### W

Wave function

#### $\mathbf{X}$

**XOR** 

#### Z

Zero matrix

### Zhegalkin basis Zhegalkin polynomial

### **Footnotes**

- 1 Max Karl Ernst Ludwig Planck (1858–1947).
- 2 Max Born (1882–1970).
- 3 Erwin Rudolf Josef Alexander Schrödinger (1887–1961).
- 4 William Rowan Hamilton (1805–1865).
- 5 Satyendra Nath Bose (1894–1974).
- 6 Enrico Fermi (1901–1954).
- 7 Murray Gell-Mann (1929–2019).